

# 2024 FORD **ESCAPE** Owner's Manual







The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2023

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3956en-202305-20230724090138

## California Proposition 65



**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.  
**Wash your hands after handling.**



# Table of Contents

## Contacting Us

Contacting Us .....	17
---------------------	----

## Introduction

About This Publication .....	19
Using This Publication .....	20
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication .....	20

## Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle .....	21
------------------------------------	----

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy .....	24
Service Data .....	25
Event Data .....	25
Settings Data .....	26
Connected Vehicle Data .....	26
Mobile Device Data .....	27
Emergency Call System Data .....	27

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	28
----------------------------------	----

## Visual Search

Steering Wheel .....	29
Instrument Panel .....	30

## Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions .....	31
Child Restraint Anchor Points .....	32
Child Restraints .....	33
Installing Child Restraints .....	34
Booster Seats .....	39
Child Safety Locks .....	41

## Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions .....	42
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts .....	43

Sensitive Locking Mode .....	44
Automatic Locking Mode .....	44
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy .....	45
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height .....	45
Seatbelt Reminder .....	46
Checking the Seatbelts .....	47
Seatbelt Extensions .....	48

## Personal Safety System™

What Is the Personal Safety System .....	49
How Does the Personal Safety System Work .....	49
Personal Safety System Components .....	49

## Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work .....	50
How Do the Side Airbags Work .....	50
How Do the Knee Airbags Work .....	51
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work .....	51
Airbag Precautions .....	52
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats .....	53
Children and Airbags .....	53
Front Passenger Sensing System .....	54
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator .....	57
Disposing of Airbags .....	58

## Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System .....	59
Pedestrian Alert System Videos .....	59

## 911 Assist

What Is 911 Assist .....	60
Emergency Call Requirements .....	60
Emergency Call Limitations .....	60

# Table of Contents

---

## Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations .....	61
Opening and Closing the Flip Key .....	61
Removing the Key Blade .....	62
Sounding the Panic Alarm .....	62
Locating Your Vehicle .....	62
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	62
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key .....	64
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	65
Programming the Remote Control .....	65
Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings .....	65
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting .....	65

## Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle .....	66
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle .....	66
Autounlock .....	67
Autolock .....	67
Mislock .....	68
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings .....	68
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting .....	68

## Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry .....	70
Keyless Entry Limitations .....	70
Keyless Entry Settings .....	70
Using Keyless Entry .....	70
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting .....	71

## Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work .....	72
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off .....	72

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions .....	73
Opening the Liftgate .....	73
Closing the Liftgate .....	73

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions .....	75
Opening the Liftgate .....	75
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off .....	76
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height .....	76
Closing the Liftgate .....	76
Stopping the Liftgate Movement .....	77
Liftgate Obstacle Detection .....	78
Liftgate – Troubleshooting .....	78

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	80
Anti-Theft Alarm System .....	80
Security – Troubleshooting .....	81

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	83
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off .....	83

## Wipers and Washers

Wipers .....	84
Autowipers .....	84
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off .....	85
Reverse Wipe .....	85
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	86
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .....	86
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades .....	86
Washers .....	87

# Table of Contents

Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting .....	88
--	----

## Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control .....	89
Headlamps .....	89
Headlamps – Troubleshooting .....	90
Autolamps .....	90
Exterior Lamps .....	91
Automatic High Beam Control .....	92
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting .....	94
Exterior Lighting Videos .....	95

## Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off .....	96
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off .....	96
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off .....	96
Interior Lamp Function .....	96
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness .....	96
Ambient Lighting .....	97

## Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows .....	98
Window Bounce-Back .....	98
Locking the Rear Window Controls .....	99

## Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions .....	100
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror .....	100
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....	100

## Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors .....	101
Folding the Exterior Mirrors .....	101

## Moonroof

Opening and Closing the Sunshade .....	102
Opening and Closing the Moonroof .....	102
Venting the Moonroof .....	103
Moonroof Bounce-Back .....	103

## Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™/2.0L EcoBoost™, Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	104
Instrument Cluster Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™/2.0L EcoBoost™, Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	105
Instrument Cluster Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	106
Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	107
Instrument Cluster Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	108
Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	109
Tachometer .....	109
Power Gauge .....	110
Speedometer .....	110
Fuel Gauge .....	110
Vehicle Range Display .....	110
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge .....	111
What Is the Information Bar .....	111
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps .....	111
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps .....	111
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators .....	113

# Table of Contents

Instrument Cluster Indicators .....	113
-------------------------------------	-----

## Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls .....	115
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	115
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	116
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	116
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	117
Personalized Settings .....	117
Fuel Economy Display - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	118
Fuel Economy Display - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	118
EV Coach .....	118
Electric Economy .....	119
Battery Charge .....	119
Brake Coach .....	119
Trip Summary .....	119
Vehicle Charging Status .....	120

## Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	121
Accessing the Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	121
Resetting the Trip Computer .....	121
Trip Data .....	121

## Head Up Display

What Is the Head Up Display .....	122
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	122
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	122
Head Up Display Settings - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	122
Head Up Display Settings - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	123
Head Up Display Indicators .....	124
Head Up Display - Troubleshooting .....	125

## Remote Start

What Is Remote Start .....	126
Remote Start Limitations .....	126
Enabling Remote Start .....	126
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle .....	126
Extending the Remote Start Duration .....	126
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel .....	127
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel .....	127

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	129
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	129
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	129
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	129

# Table of Contents

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	129
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off .....	129
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	130
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....	130
Setting the Temperature .....	130
Directing the Flow of Air .....	130
Auto Mode .....	130
Climate Control Hints .....	132

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	134
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	134
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	134
Switching Defrost On and Off .....	134
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	134
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	135
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off .....	135
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	135
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....	135
Setting the Temperature .....	135
Directing the Flow of Air .....	135
Auto Mode .....	136
Climate Control Hints .....	137

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit .....	139
Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	139

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	139
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	139
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	139
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	139
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off .....	140
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	140
Setting the Temperature .....	140
Directing the Flow of Air .....	140
Climate Control Hints .....	141

## Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter .....	143
Locating the Cabin Air Filter .....	143
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter .....	143
Refreshing the Interior Air .....	143

## Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions .....	144
Sitting in the Correct Position .....	144
Manual Seats .....	145
Power Seats .....	147
Heated Seats .....	149

## Rear Seats

Manual Seats .....	151
--------------------	-----

## Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	154
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	154
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	154
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	154

# Table of Contents

Rear Occupant Alert System Settings .....	155
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	155
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	156

## Memory Function

What Is the Memory Function .....	157
Memory Function Precautions .....	157
Locating the Memory Function Buttons .....	157
Saving a Preset Position .....	157
Recalling a Preset Position .....	157

## Garage Door Opener

Garage Door Opener Introduction .....	159
Garage Door Opener Precautions and Frequencies .....	159
Programming the Garage Door Opener .....	160
Garage Door Opener Additional Assistance .....	162

## USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports .....	163
Playing Media Using the USB Port .....	163
Charging a Device .....	163

## Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet .....	165
Power Outlet Precautions .....	165
Locating the Power Outlets .....	165

## Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	166
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions .....	166
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	166
Charging a Wireless Device .....	167

## Storage

Cup Holders .....	168
Glasses Holder .....	168

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions .....	169
Ignition Switch .....	169
Push Button Ignition Switch .....	170
Starting the Engine .....	170
Engine Block Heater .....	172
Stopping the Engine .....	173
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	175
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position .....	175
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting .....	176

## Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle .....	179
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work .....	179
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics .....	179
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators .....	179
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting .....	180
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information .....	181
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting .....	182
Power Flow .....	183

## Auto-Start-Stop

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	186
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	186



# Table of Contents

Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	186
Stopping the Engine .....	186
Restarting the Engine .....	186
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	187
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	187
<b>Fuel and Refueling</b>	
Fuel and Refueling Precautions .....	189
Fuel Quality .....	189
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel .....	190
Running Out of Fuel .....	190
Refueling .....	192
Fuel Tank Capacity .....	197
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting .....	197
<b>Catalytic Converter</b>	
What Is the Catalytic Converter .....	199
Catalytic Converter Precautions .....	199
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting .....	199
<b>High Voltage Battery - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)</b>	
What Is the High Voltage Battery .....	200
High Voltage Battery Precautions .....	200
High Voltage Battery Videos .....	200
<b>Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)</b>	
What Is AC Charging .....	201
Charging Your Vehicle Precautions .....	201
Charging Equipment .....	202
Locating the Charge Port .....	204
Charge Port Indicators .....	205
AC Charging .....	206
Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences .....	207
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	213
<b>Automatic Transmission</b>	
Automatic Transmission Precautions .....	215
Automatic Transmission Positions .....	215
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear .....	216
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators .....	216
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) .....	216
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings .....	217
Temporary Neutral Mode .....	217
Automatic Return to Park (P) .....	218
Grade Assist - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), 1-Speed Automatic Transmission .....	219
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting .....	219
<b>All-Wheel Drive</b>	
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work .....	221
All-Wheel Drive Precautions .....	221
All-Wheel Drive Limitations .....	221
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting .....	221
<b>Brakes</b>	
Brake Precautions .....	222
Anti-Lock Braking System .....	222
Brake Over Accelerator .....	222
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir .....	222
Checking the Brake Fluid .....	223
Brake Fluid Specification .....	223
Brakes – Troubleshooting .....	224
<b>Electric Parking Brake</b>	
What Is the Electric Parking Brake .....	225

# Table of Contents

---

Applying the Electric Parking Brake .....	225
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency .....	225
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	225
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	226
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning .....	226
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge .....	226
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....	226

## Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist .....	228
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work .....	228
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions .....	228
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off .....	229
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist .....	229
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators .....	229
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting .....	230

## Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist .....	232
How Does Hill Start Assist Work .....	232
Hill Start Assist Precautions .....	232
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting .....	232

## Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work .....	233
Switching Auto Hold On and Off .....	233
Using Auto Hold .....	233
Auto Hold Indicators .....	234

## Traction Control

What Is Traction Control .....	235
How Does Traction Control Work .....	235

Switching Traction Control On and Off .....	235
Traction Control Indicator .....	235
Traction Control – Troubleshooting .....	235

## Stability Control

What Is Stability Control .....	237
How Does Stability Control Work .....	237
Switching Stability Control On and Off .....	237
Stability Control Indicator .....	237

## Steering

Electric Power Steering .....	238
Steering – Troubleshooting .....	238

## Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions .....	241
Switching Parking Aid On and Off .....	241
Rear Parking Aid .....	242
Front Parking Aid .....	242
Side Parking Aid .....	243
Parking Aid Indicators .....	245
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting .....	245

## Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera .....	247
Rear View Camera Precautions .....	247
Rear View Camera Limitations .....	247
Locating the Rear View Camera .....	247
Rear View Camera Guide Lines .....	247
Rear View Camera Settings .....	248

## 360 Degree Camera

How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work .....	250
360 Degree Camera Precautions .....	250
360 Degree Camera Limitations .....	250
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras .....	250
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines .....	250

# Table of Contents

Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off .....	251
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View .....	252

## Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist .....	253
Active Park Assist Precautions .....	253
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off .....	253
Entering a Parallel Parking Space .....	253
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space .....	254
Exiting a Parking Space .....	254
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting .....	255

## Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control .....	257
Switching Cruise Control On and Off .....	257
Setting the Cruise Control Speed .....	257
Canceling the Set Speed .....	258
Resuming the Set Speed .....	258
Cruise Control Indicators .....	258

## Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work .....	259
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions .....	259
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations .....	260
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off .....	261
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation .....	262
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed .....	262
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap .....	263
Canceling the Set Speed .....	264
Resuming the Set Speed .....	264

Overriding the Set Speed .....	264
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators .....	264
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control .....	264
Lane Centering .....	264
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting .....	267
Predictive Speed Assist .....	268
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting .....	272

## Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control - 1.5L EcoBoost™/2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	273
What Is Drive Mode Control - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	273
Selecting a Drive Mode .....	274
Drive Modes .....	274
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes .....	274
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Troubleshooting .....	276

## Eco Coach

What Is Eco Coach .....	277
How Does Eco Coach Work .....	277
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work .....	277
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	277
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	277
How Does Trip Summary Work .....	277
Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	278
Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	278

# Table of Contents

## Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System .....	279
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work .....	279
Lane Keeping System Precautions .....	279
Lane Keeping System Limitations .....	280
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off .....	280
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode .....	280
Alert Mode .....	280
Aid Mode .....	281
Alert and Aid Mode .....	281
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	282
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	282
Blind Spot Assist .....	283
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage .....	285
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting .....	288

## Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System .....	289
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work .....	289
Blind Spot Information System Precautions .....	289
Blind Spot Information System Limitations .....	289
Blind Spot Information System Requirements .....	290
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off .....	290
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors .....	290
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage .....	290

Blind Spot Information System Indicators .....	292
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting .....	292

## Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert .....	294
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work .....	294
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions .....	294
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations .....	294
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off .....	295
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors .....	295
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage .....	295
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators .....	296
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting .....	296

## Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist .....	297
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work .....	297
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work .....	298
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions .....	298
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations .....	298
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	299
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	299
Distance Indication .....	299
Forward Collision Warning .....	300
Automatic Emergency Braking .....	300
Evasive Steering Assist .....	301
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting .....	301

## Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition .....	303
--------------------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

---

How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work .....	303
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions .....	303
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations .....	303
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators .....	303
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning .....	304
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance .....	304
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting .....	304

## Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert .....	305
How Does Driver Alert Work .....	305
Driver Alert Precautions .....	305
Switching Driver Alert On and Off .....	305
Resetting Driver Alert .....	305
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting .....	306

## Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions .....	307
Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels .....	308
What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating .....	308
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating .....	308
What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight .....	308
What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating .....	308
Calculating Payload .....	309
Calculating the Load Limit .....	309
Roof Rack .....	311

## Luggage Compartment

Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover .....	313
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points .....	314

## Connecting a Trailer

Connecting a Trailer Precautions .....	315
Connecting a Trailer .....	315

## Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions .....	317
Trailer Brake Precautions .....	317
Towing a Trailer Limitations .....	318
Loading Your Trailer .....	318
Trailer Towing Hints .....	318
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft .....	319
Towing Weights and Dimensions .....	320

## Trailer Sway Control

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work .....	322
Trailer Sway Control Precautions .....	322
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off .....	322

## Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions .....	323
Driving on Snow and Ice .....	323
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold Weather Driving - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	323
Breaking-In .....	323
Driving Economically .....	323
Driving in Special Conditions .....	324
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	325
Floor Mats .....	325

## Crash and Breakdown Information

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	327
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off .....	328

# Table of Contents

Jump Starting the Vehicle .....	328
Post-Crash Alert System .....	331
Post-Collision Braking .....	331
Automatic Crash Shutoff .....	331
Recovery Towing .....	332
Transporting the Vehicle .....	333
Fail-Safe Cooling .....	333

## Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....	335
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	335
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	335
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	335
Emergency Towing - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	336
Emergency Towing - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	336
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	337

## Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need .....	338
In California (U.S. Only) .....	339
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only) .....	340
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only) .....	341
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada .....	341
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature .....	343

Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only) .....	343
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only) .....	343

## Fuses

Fuse Precautions .....	345
Under Hood Fuse Box .....	345
Body Control Module Fuse Box .....	351
Identifying Fuse Types .....	353
Fuses – Troubleshooting .....	353

## Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions .....	354
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	354
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	356
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	357
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	358
Engine Oil .....	359
Engine Air Filter .....	360
Coolant .....	364
12V Battery .....	367
12V Battery – Troubleshooting .....	371
Adjusting the Headlamps .....	373
Maintenance Videos .....	374

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning Products .....	375
Cleaning the Exterior .....	376
Cleaning the Interior .....	377
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	379
Waxing Your Vehicle .....	380

## Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage .....	381
--	-----

# Table of Contents

Removing Your Vehicle From Storage .....	382
--	-----

## Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label .....	383
Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades .....	383
Information on the Tire Sidewall .....	384
Glossary of Tire Terminology .....	389
Tire Replacement Requirements .....	390
Using Snow Chains .....	392

## Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures .....	394
Inflating the Tires .....	394
Inspecting the Tire for Wear .....	395
Inspecting the Tire for Damage .....	396
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems .....	400
Tire Rotation .....	400

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	402
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview .....	402
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....	403
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....	403
Viewing the Tire Pressures .....	404
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....	404

## Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire .....	406
Wheel Nuts .....	411

## Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	412
Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	413
Engine Specifications - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	414
Motorcraft Parts - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	415
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	415
Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	416
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	416
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	418
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	419
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	420
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	421
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV) .....	422
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L Duratec, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	423
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBoost™ / 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	423
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV) .....	424
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.5L Duratec, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	425
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	426
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	426

# Table of Contents

Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	427
Washer Fluid Specification .....	428
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission .....	429
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission .....	429
Brake Fluid Specification .....	430
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification .....	431

## Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number .....	432
-------------------------------------	-----

## Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	433
Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	433
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	433
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	433
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	433
Connected Vehicle Settings .....	434
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	434

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot .....	436
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password .....	436
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting .....	437

## Audio System

Audio System Precautions .....	438
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off .....	438
Selecting the Audio Source .....	438

Playing or Pausing the Audio Source .....	438
Adjusting the Volume .....	438
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off .....	438
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off .....	438
Setting a Memory Preset .....	439
Muting the Audio .....	439
Scrolling Through Menu Items .....	439
Selecting a Menu Item .....	439
Adjusting the Sound Settings .....	439
Setting the Clock and Date .....	439
FM Radio .....	439
Switching the Display On and Off .....	440
Digital Radio .....	440
Satellite Radio .....	441

## Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions .....	443
Center Display Limitations .....	443
Status Bar .....	443
Feature Bar - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen .....	444
Home Screen - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen .....	444
Information On Demand Screen - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen .....	445
Rebooting the Center Display .....	445

## Voice Interaction

What is Voice Interaction .....	446
Setting the Wake Word .....	446
Beginning a Voice Interaction .....	446
Voice Interaction Examples .....	446

## Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In .....	448
Alexa Built-In Requirements .....	448
Signing In to Your Account .....	448



# Table of Contents

Using Alexa Built-In .....	448	Software Update Indicators .....	461
Alexa Built-In Settings .....	448	<b>Vehicle System Reset</b>	
<b>Phone</b>		Performing a System Reset .....	462
Phone Precautions .....	450	<b>Ford Protect</b>	
Connecting Your Phone .....	450	What Is Ford Protect .....	463
Phone Menu .....	450	<b>Scheduled Maintenance</b>	
Making and Receiving a Phone Call .....	452	General Maintenance Information .....	465
Sending and Receiving a Text Message .....	453	Normal Scheduled Maintenance .....	468
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off .....	454	Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance .....	471
<b>Bluetooth®</b>		<b>Customer Information</b>	
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device .....	455	Rollover Warning .....	474
Playing Media Using Bluetooth® .....	455	The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program .....	474
<b>Apps</b>		The Mediation and Arbitration Program .....	475
App Precautions .....	456	Ordering a Canadian French Owner's Manual .....	475
App Requirements .....	456	Reporting Safety Defects in the United States .....	476
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device .....	456	Reporting Safety Defects in Canada .....	476
Enabling Apps on an Android Device .....	456	Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment .....	477
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off .....	456	Radio Frequency Certification Labels .....	477
Switching Android Auto On and Off .....	457	Perchlorate .....	520
<b>Navigation</b>		Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	520
Connected Navigation .....	458	Mobile Communications Equipment .....	521
Accessing Navigation .....	458	End User License Agreement .....	521
Navigation Map Updates .....	458	Emission Law .....	546
Adjusting the Map .....	458	Export Unique Options .....	547
Live Traffic .....	458	Warranty Information .....	548
Setting a Destination .....	458	<b>Appendices</b>	
Waypoints .....	459	Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	550
Route Guidance .....	459		
<b>Vehicle Software Updates</b>			
Vehicle Software Updates .....	460		
Software Update Settings .....	460		



# Contacting Us

---

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship center.

## United States

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
PO Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone  
service provider)  
[www.ford.com/help/contact/](http://www.ford.com/help/contact/)

## Ford Credit - US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For assistance call 1-800-727-7000, or for more information about Ford Credit and access to an account manager, visit [www.ford.com/finance](http://www.ford.com/finance).

## Canada

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4  
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone  
service provider)  
[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

## Australia

Ford Motor Company of Australia Pty Ltd.  
Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Mail Bag 5  
Campbellfield, Victoria, 3061  
Telephone: (13 FORD) 13 3673  
E-mail: [foacust1@ford.com](mailto:foacust1@ford.com)

## New Zealand

Ford Motor Company  
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Bag 76912  
Manukau City 2241  
Telephone: 0800 367 369 (FORDNZ)  
E-mail: [fnzcust@ford.com](mailto:fnzcust@ford.com)

## China - Imported Vehicle

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 400-690-1886  
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

## China - Chang'An Ford

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 800-810-8168  
Mobile: 400-887-7766  
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

## Asia Pacific Direct Markets (APDM)

E-mail: [apemcrc@ford.com](mailto:apemcrc@ford.com)

## Caribbean, Central America and Israel

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
E-mail: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

## U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Telephone: (800) 841-3673  
E-mail: [prcac@ford.com](mailto:prcac@ford.com)

# Contacting Us

---

## Argentina

Telephone: 0800-888-3673

## Brazil

Website: [www.ford.com.br](http://www.ford.com.br)  
Telephone: 0800-703-3673  
E-mail: [central@ford.com](mailto:central@ford.com)

## North Africa

E-mail: [nafcrc@ford.com](mailto:nafcrc@ford.com)

## South Africa

Telephone: 0860011022  
Email: [fordcrc2@ford.com](mailto:fordcrc2@ford.com)

## Sub-Saharan Africa

E-mail: [ssacrc@ford.com](mailto:ssacrc@ford.com)

## Puerto Rico

Ford International Business Development,  
Inc.  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, PR 00922-1957  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
E-mail: [prcac@ford.com](mailto:prcac@ford.com)  
[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)

## Middle East

Ford Middle East Customer Relationship  
Center  
P.O. Box 21740  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: 80004441066  
Toll-free number for the Kingdom of Saudi  
Arabia: 8008443673  
Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi  
Arabia: 800850078  
Kuwait: 22280384  
Local telephone number for Kuwait: +965  
1 898900  
Fax: +971 4 3327266  
E-mail: [menacac@ford.com](mailto:menacac@ford.com)  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)

## South Korea

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: +82-02-1600-6003  
E-mail: [infokr1@ford.com](mailto:infokr1@ford.com)  
Emergency Dispatch Service call:  
080-300-3673

## Philippines

Telephone: 02-88669408  
Email: [emailus@ford.com](mailto:emailus@ford.com)

## Taiwan

Telephone: 0800-032100  
705 Zhonghua Rd., Sec. 1  
Zhongli District, Taoyuan, Taiwan, 32068

## Thailand

Telephone: 1383  
E-mail: [fordthai@ford.com](mailto:fordthai@ford.com)

## Vietnam

Telephone: 1800588888  
E-mail: [fordvn@ford.com](mailto:fordvn@ford.com)

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle, print, in FordPass app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

**Note:** Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

## Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

## Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at [OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com](mailto:OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com).

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

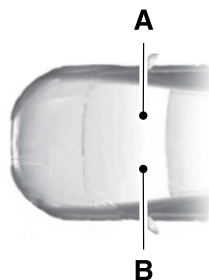
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

## Illustrations

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

## Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.


# Introduction

---

## Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

### Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

1.  Press the button on the touchscreen to see a list of apps.
2. Select the Owner's Manual application.

### Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

1. Press Apps or Features on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Some vehicles have the Apps or Features buttons on the home screen. Not all vehicles have a Features button.*

2. Select the Owner's Manual application.

## Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

### Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the FordPass app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

**Note:** *To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.*

**Note:** *We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.*

## Printed Owner' Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com) or see an authorized dealer.

In Europe, visit [www.z-order.de](http://www.z-order.de) or see an authorized dealer.

All other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

## USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

## WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

### Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.
























### Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

# Symbols Glossary

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

	Airbag		Child safety door lock or unlock
	Air conditioning system		Child seat lower anchor
	Air conditioning system lubricant type		Child seat tether anchor
	Anti-lock braking system		Cruise control
	Avoid smoking, flames or sparks		Do not open when hot
	Battery		Electric Parking brake
	Battery acid		Engine air filter
	Blower motor		Engine coolant
	Brake fluid - non petroleum based		Engine coolant temperature
	Brake system		Engine oil
	Brake system		Explosive gas
	Cabin air filter		Fan warning
	Check fuel cap		Fasten seatbelt
			Flammable
			Front fog lamps

# Symbols Glossary



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard flashers



Headlamp high beams



Headlamps on



Heated rear window



Hill descent control



Horn control



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low fuel level



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking lamps



Passenger airbag activated



Passenger airbag deactivated



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Requires registered technician



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



See Service Manual



Side airbag



## Symbols Glossary

---



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Stability control off



Trail control



Turn Signal



Windshield defrosting system



Windshield wiping system



Windshield wash and wipe

# Data Privacy



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Where equipped, SiriusXM with 360L could use the modem. To disable, turn off the SiriusXM with 360L or Vehicle Connectivity setting. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 433).

# Data Privacy

---

## SERVICE DATA

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, for example, your contact information, to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshooting, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest

you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca), including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries.

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

# Data Privacy

**Note:** Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

## Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

## Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 433).

**Note:** The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.

**Note:** To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 456).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 462).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

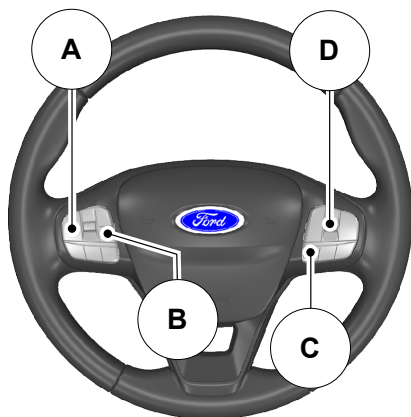
## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

# Visual Search

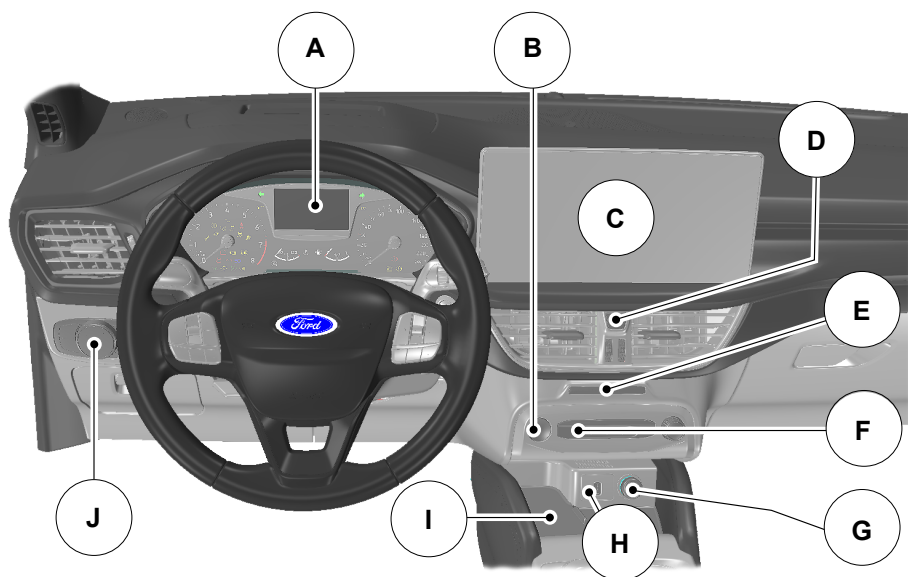
## STEERING WHEEL



- A See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 261). See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 257).
- B See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 280).
- C See **Making and Receiving a Phone Call** (page 452).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 115).

# Visual Search

## INSTRUMENT PANEL



- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 106). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 107). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 104). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 105). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 108). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 109).
- B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 170).
- C See **Status Bar** (page 443).
- D See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 328).
- E See **How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work** (page 54).
- F See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 253).
- G See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 165).
- H See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 163).
- I See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 167).
- J See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 89).



# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to [www.nhtsa.dot.gov](http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov). In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

# Child Safety

**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



When installing a child restraint with seatbelts:

- Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint.
- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

# Child Safety

## LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Install the child restraint tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

### Rear Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt Only
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	X	X
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		X

### Forward Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	X	X	X
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		X	X

# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.

When possible, properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

When installing a rear facing child restraint, adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### USING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

**Note:** *Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward-facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear-facing child restraint.*

Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with seatbelts:

# Child Safety

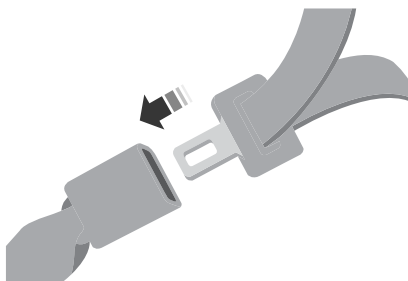
1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a seatbelt.



2. After positioning the child restraint in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure that you did not twist the belt webbing.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the belt out.

**Note:** The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.

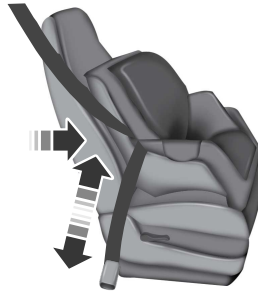
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

## Child Safety

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor did not lock, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

### USING LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHERS FOR CHILDREN



**WARNING:** Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) system has three vehicle anchor points.

- Two lower anchors where the seat backrest and seat cushion meet, called the seat bight.
- One top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH-compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH-equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint.

However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.

Follow the instructions on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

## INSTALLING A CHILD RESTRAINT IN A CENTER SEAT



**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 in (46 cm) apart. You cannot install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments at the center seating position. You can only use LATCH compatible child restraints with attachments on belt webbing at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the child restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than 1 in (2.5 cm).

If you did not properly anchor the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

# Child Safety

## COMBINING THE SEATBELT AND LOWER ANCHORS FOR ATTACHING CHILD RESTRAINTS

When used in combination, you may attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if it is included with the child restraint.

## USING TETHER STRAPS

Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.

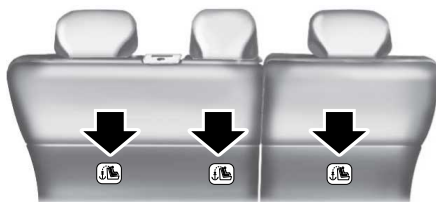
Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once you install the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

Perform the following steps to install a child restraint with tether anchors.

**Note:** *If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For the outermost seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating position, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, you can also remove the head restraints.



2. Locate the correct anchor behind the gap cover for the selected seating position.



3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
4. Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



# Child Safety

If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

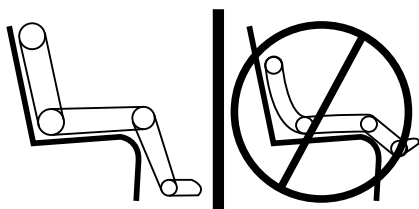
## BOOSTER SEATS

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint and meet the following criteria.

- Generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall.
- Are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12).
- Are between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg).

Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer yes to all of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?

- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

## Types of Booster Seats



- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield.

If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head, as measured at the tops of the ears, above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high-back booster seat.

## Child Safety



If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high-back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder.

The following drawings compare the ideal fit to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

- High-back booster seats



# Child Safety

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not use any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

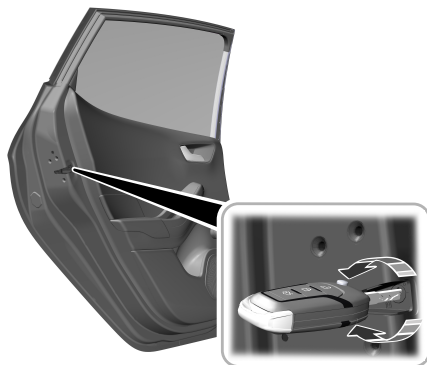
**Note:** To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

**Note:** To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

### Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

### Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** Children must always be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair. Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.



**WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- A shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, except driver seatbelt.
- Height adjusters at the front outermost seating positions.

# Seatbelts

- Seatbelt pretensioners at the front outermost and second row outermost seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outermost passenger seating position.



A seatbelt warning light and tone.



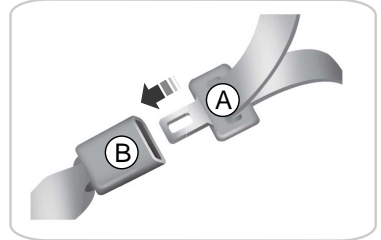
Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a Safety Canopy airbag deploys.

## FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

### Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelts.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

**Note:** It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.



When in use, place the rear seatbelts in the belt guides on the outermost seat backrests.

# Seatbelts

## Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

## SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

Sensitive locking mode is a seatbelt retractor feature that allows shoulder belt length adjustment according to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

### HOW DOES SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE WORK

If the driver suddenly brakes, turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the seatbelt retractor locks if you pull the seatbelt webbing out too quickly. If the retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract.

If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

## AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

This is a safety feature built into the seatbelt retractors that keeps the seatbelts pre-locked.

## ENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## DISENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.

## Extracting Seatbelts in the Rear Outermost Seat Positions

Seatbelts in the rear outermost positions can lock if you firmly return the seat backrest to its upright position. You can unlock the seatbelts using the following procedures.

For vehicles where the rear seats recline:

1. Recline the seat to its full rear recline position.

# Seatbelts

2. The seatbelt should then unlock.
3. Return the seat backrest to its desired upright position.

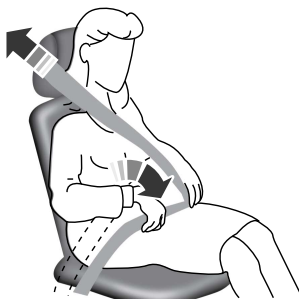
For vehicles with rear seats that do not recline or are locked with the seat in its full rear recline position:

1. Grasp the seatbelt webbing at the top of the seat backrest.
2. Pull the seatbelt webbing forward, firmly.
3. After pulling the seatbelt forward, allow the seatbelt to feed back into the seatbelt retractor as much as possible. If necessary, press the seat backrest down to allow the seatbelt webbing to retract further.
4. The seatbelt should then unlock.
5. If the seatbelt does not unlock, repeat steps 1-3.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



# Seatbelts

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### HOW DOES THE SEATBELT REMINDER WORK



**WARNING:** The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

This system monitors all seating positions and provides audio and graphic feedback.

### SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The tone switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute elapses.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This warning tone sounds if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

This tone also sounds if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

### SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

**Note:** *The driver and front passenger warnings switch off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this cancels the process.*

Read Steps 1 - 4 before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Make sure that:

- You set the parking brake.
  - The transmission is in park (P).
  - The ignition is off.
  - You close all vehicle doors.
  - You unfasten the driver and front passenger seatbelts.
1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
  2. Wait about one minute until the seatbelt warning light switches off. After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
  3. For the seating position you are switching off, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unfastened state. After Step 3, the seatbelt warning light switches on.



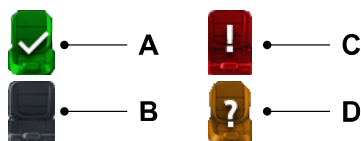
# Seatbelts

- When the seatbelt warning light is on, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt. After Step 4, the seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

This switches the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.

This switches the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

## CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

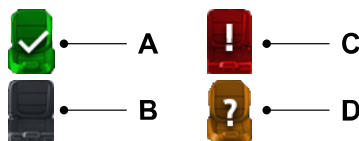


- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

### Checking Seatbelt Status

- Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
- Select **Status Information**.
- Select **Seat Belts**.

## CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

### Checking Seatbelt Status

- Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
- Select **Status Information**.
- Select **Seat belts**.

## CHECKING THE SEATBELTS

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.

Check the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Front seatbelt buckle assemblies.
- Shoulder belt height adjusters.
- Shoulder belt guide on seat backrest.

# Seatbelts

- Child restraint LATCH and tether anchors.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Cleaning Seatbelts** (page 379).



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the way the seatbelt fits across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from our dealers. Only use our seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelt manufacturer with our seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your vehicle restraint system.

## SEATBELT EXTENSIONS



**WARNING:** Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Only use extensions provided free of charge by our dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.



**WARNING:** Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.

# Personal Safety System™

---

## WHAT IS THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM

An advanced safety system that protects occupants in frontal crashes.

## HOW DOES THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM WORK

This system provides an improved level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system analyzes occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, and one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

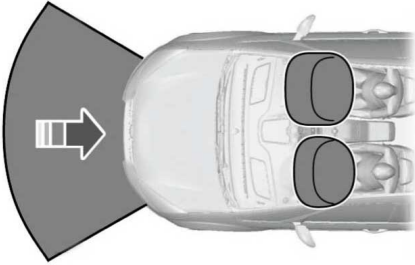
- Restraint system warning light and tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

## PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Passenger seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicators.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.

# Airbags

## HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The driver and front passenger airbags deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium

compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Contact with a deploying airbag may cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag.

Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

## HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front and rear seat backrest. In certain sideways crashes or rollovers, the airbags will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The rear side airbag will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat.



The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests, as well as side airbags inside of each outermost rear seat backrest.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

## HOW DO THE KNEE AIRBAGS WORK

The driver knee airbag is under or within the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the knee airbag based on crash severity and respective occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the knee airbag may deploy but the corresponding front airbag may not activate. It is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

## HOW DOES THE SAFETY CANOPY™ WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



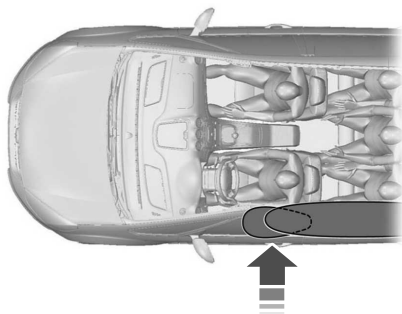
**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

# Airbags

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy inflates between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



The system consists of the following:

- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

## AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## PROPERLY ADJUSTING THE DRIVER AND FRONT PASSENGER SEATS



**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. Properly seated occupants sit upright, lean against the seat backrest, and center themselves on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

## CHILDREN AND AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Airbags



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

### HOW DOES THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM WORK

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

**Note:** When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



The indicator lamps are in the center stack of the instrument panel.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint, but the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.



# Airbags

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.

- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.

# Airbags

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Failure to follow this instruction may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



**WARNING:** Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM INDICATORS

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front of your vehicle could affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. This includes the hood, bumper system, frame, front body structure, tow hooks, hood pins, push bar and snowplows.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors. These sensors provide information to the restraints control module which deploys (activates) the following:

- Seatbelt pretensioners.
- Driver airbag.
- Passenger airbag.
- Knee airbag(s).
- Seat mounted side airbags.
- Safety Canopy.

Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after you switch the ignition on.

- The readiness light either flashes or stays on.
- You hear a series of five beeps. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, seatbelt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The design of the front seatbelt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers. The design of the rear seatbelt pretensioners is to activate in frontal crashes and in rollovers.
- The design of the knee airbag(s) is to deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

# Airbags

---

- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

## DISPOSING OF AIRBAGS

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# Pedestrian Alert System

---

## WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

## PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM VIDEOS

[\*Pedestrian Alert System Video Link\*](#)

# 911 Assist

## WHAT IS 911 ASSIST

911 Assist is a SYNC system feature that can call for help.

For more information, visit [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.



**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

- SYNC is powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a **Bluetooth®** enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.

- A connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is off and the phone connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

**Note:** *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

## EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number. The following are limitations of this feature:

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 33 ft (10 m).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

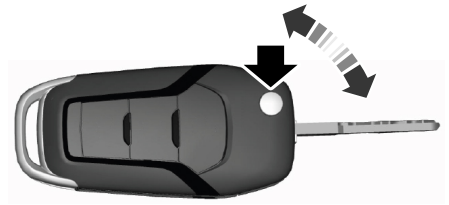
**Note:** If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY

### Opening Your Flip Key

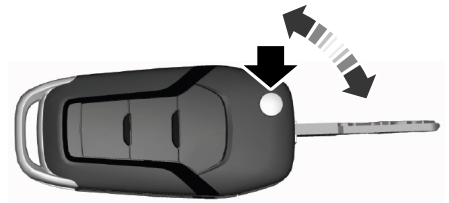
Press the round button on the remote control to extend the flip key.



**Note:** Inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush.

### Closing Your Flip Key

Press and hold the round button on the remote control to fold the key blade when not in use.



# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button on your passive key and pull the key blade out.

## SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM

(IF EQUIPPED)



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again, or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

**Note:** The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.

## LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash.

**Note:** We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

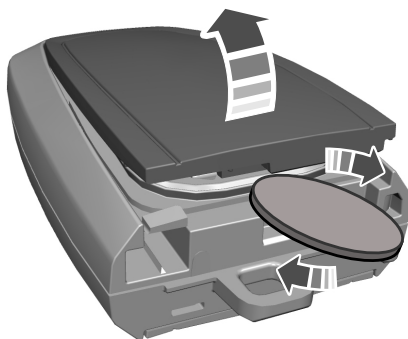
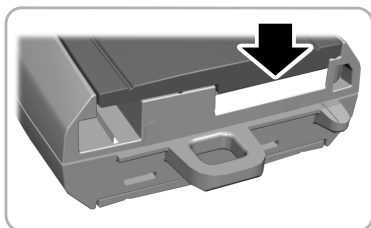
The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.



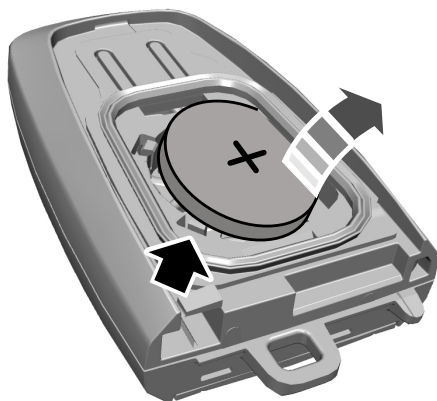


## Keys and Remote Controls

1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

## Keys and Remote Controls

### CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH REMOTE FLIP KEY



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

#### Battery Replacement Procedure

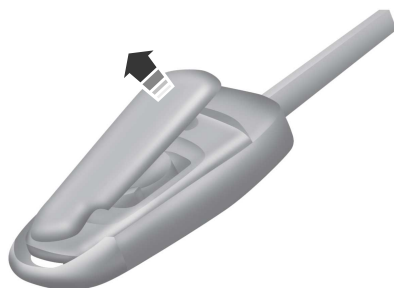
The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Press the button to release the key blade before beginning the procedure.

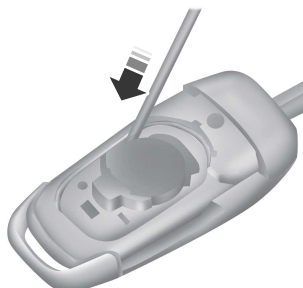


1. Insert a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.

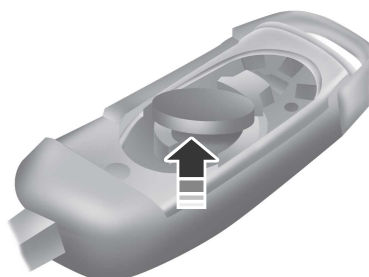
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



3. Carefully remove the cover.



4. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.



# Keys and Remote Controls

**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

5. Remove the battery.
6. Install a new battery with the + facing up.
7. Replace the battery cover.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.



**Note:** Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

## PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Key In Reminder

Sounds when the following conditions are met:

- Vehicle is out of park (P).
- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver's door.
- You have left the key inside the vehicle.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Replace remote control battery.

# Doors and Locks

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

#### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors.

#### Locking the Doors

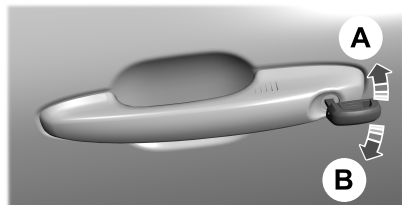


Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

**Note:** For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 70).

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

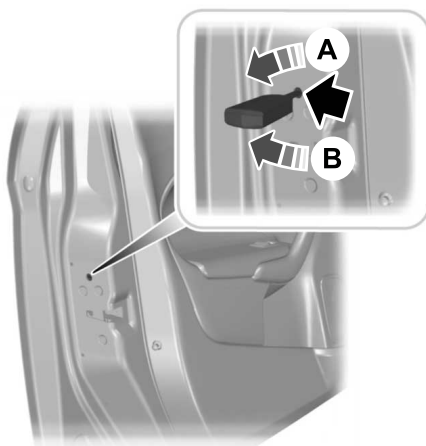
If there is a power door lock fault, use the key blade to lock and unlock the driver door.



- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

### INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the doors.



- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to unlock all doors.

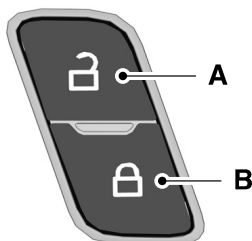
# Doors and Locks



Press the button to lock all doors.

## INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE LOCKING BUTTON

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



A Unlock.

B Lock.

## OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

## AUTOUNLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

## AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

**Note:** *Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.*

## SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Switch **Autounlock** on or off.

## AUTOLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that centrally locks your vehicle doors when driving.

## AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and the ignition is on.
2. Your vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

Autolock repeats if:

1. Your vehicle is stopped.
2. Any door is opened and closed again.
3. Your vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

# Doors and Locks

## MISLOCK

### WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

### MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

When you press the lock button twice within three seconds, the horn sounds if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

### SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

- Press **Vehicle Settings**.
- Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

## DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

#### Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver Door Ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger Door Ajar	
Rear Left Door Ajar	
Rear Right Door Ajar	
Hood Ajar	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

# Doors and Locks

---

## **DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?**

- Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

# Keyless Entry

## WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

## KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

### Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

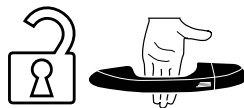
You can change between the unlocking modes on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Press **Remote Unlock**.
5. Select a setting.

## USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.



# Keyless Entry

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

## Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

**Note:** *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

## KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 70). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

#### Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

#### Why does the passive key not work?

- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

# Easy Entry and Exit

---

## HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

This feature moves the driver seat rearward up to 2 in (5 cm) when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat returns to its previous position when you switch the ignition on.

## SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Easy Entry/Exit**.

If you press any adjustment or memory button when in easy exit mode, the system cancels the operation.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

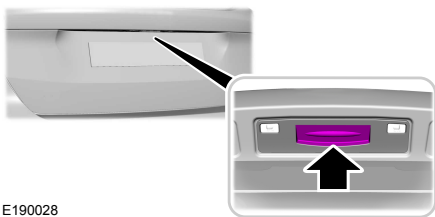
## LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks, you can open the liftgate using the outside control button.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

---



E291353

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

**Note:** *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

## LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

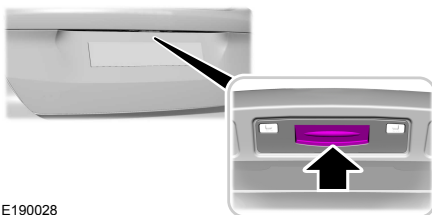
**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

**Note:** If an authorized device is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate control button.



E190028

2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Power Liftgate**.
4. Select a setting.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

## SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

**Note:** Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

**Note:** You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

**Note:** You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.

**Note:** The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

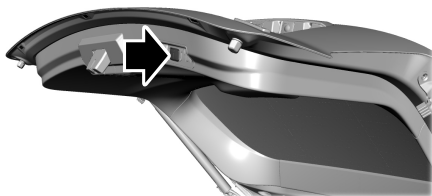
**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



E291351

Press and release the liftgate button.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

**Note:** Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Selections will vary depending on region or options.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

### LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

#### Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

**Note:** *To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.*

#### Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

### LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

### LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate Ajar	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.



# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

---

## LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

**Note:** The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

### WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

### ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

### DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

# Security

## SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No Key Detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm	

# Security

---

## **SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?**

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### **What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?**

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

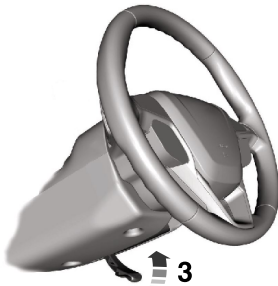


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 144).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the climate control unit.

On some vehicles, an indicator on the button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on.

**Note:** A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.

# Wipers and Washers

## WIPERS

### WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

### SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe/Auto wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.



Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

## AUTOWIPERS

### WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

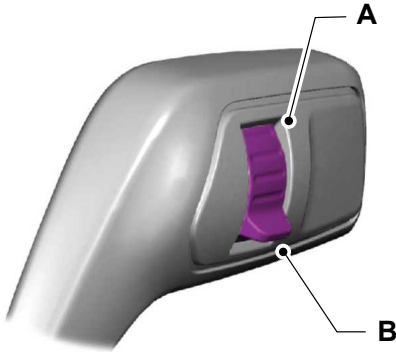
### AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

**Note:** When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

# Wipers and Washers

## ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



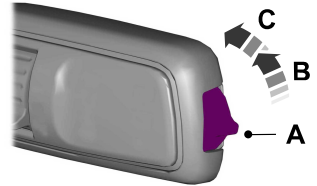
- A High sensitivity.
- B Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

## SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Continuous wipe.

## REVERSE WIPE

### WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

### REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

# Wipers and Washers

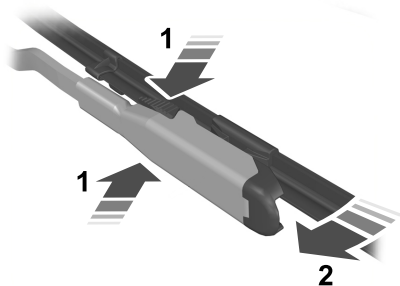
## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

## REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

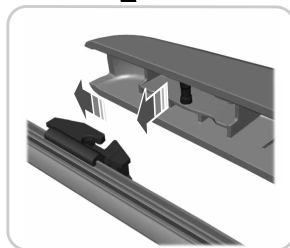
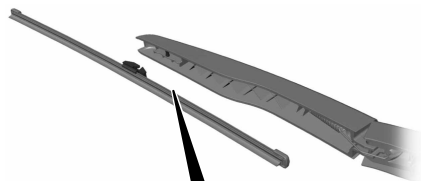
**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.

4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.



# Wipers and Washers

## WASHERS

### WASHER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 41°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

### USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

**Note:** A *courtesy wipe* occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 87).

### SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

**Note:** When you switch the feature on, the wipers make an additional single wipe at the end of the washer request. When you switch it off, the wipers finish the current washer request.

### USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER

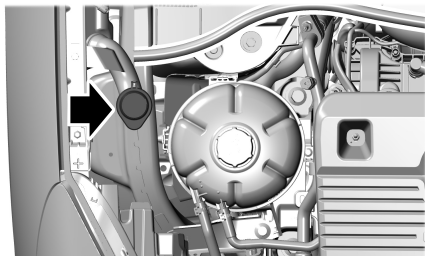


Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer.

**Note:** A *courtesy wipe* occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 87).

# Wipers and Washers

## ADDING WASHER FLUID



1. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
2. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 428).
3. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

**Note:** *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

## WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

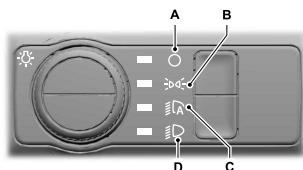
## WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 86). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 86).

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



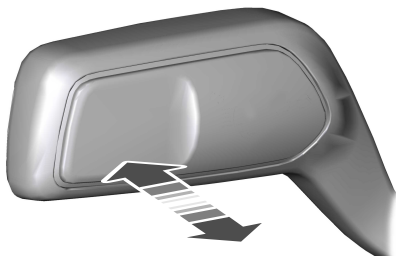
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

## HEADLAMPS

### USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

**Note:** Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

## SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

**Note:** The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

## HEADLAMP INDICATORS

### Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

### Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

# Exterior Lighting

## HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

#### How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

#### How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

#### How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

#### What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

#### Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

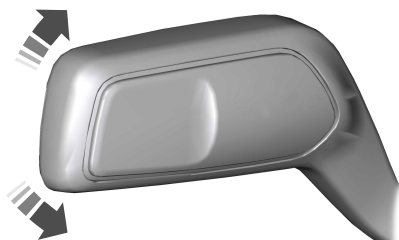
### AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- Press **Vehicle**.
- Press **Lighting**.
- Press **Autolamp Delay**.
- Select a setting.

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

### Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

### SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (DRL)



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

### SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: CONFIGURABLE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Daytime Running Lights** on or off.

The daytime running lamps turn on when all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You switch your vehicle on.

# Exterior Lighting

- The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or you release the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
- The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
- The headlamps are off.


**Note:** Other lighting control positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

## USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

**Note:** When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

**Note:** The front fog lamps lights switch off automatically when high beams are activated.

## Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## EXTERIOR LAMP INDICATORS

### Front Fog Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

### Turn Signal Lamp



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

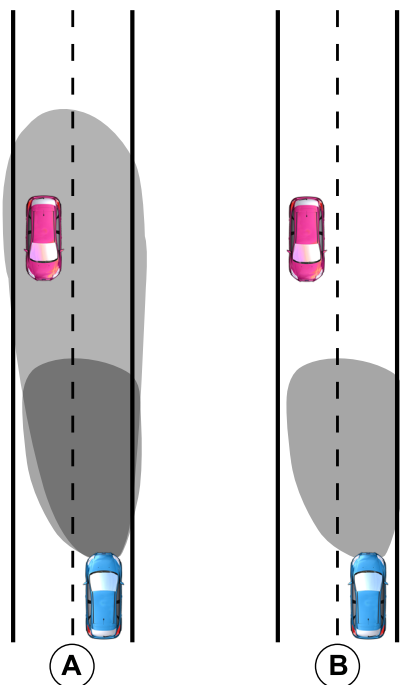
## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

# Exterior Lighting



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

# Exterior Lighting

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

**Note:** The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

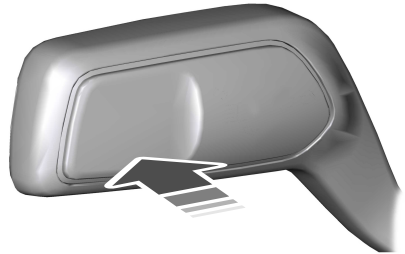
1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto Highbeam** on or off.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Exterior Lighting

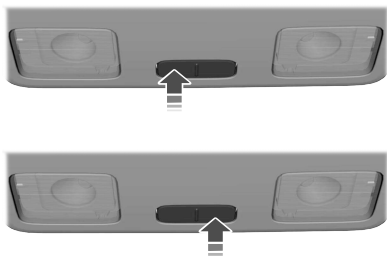
---

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING VIDEOS

[\*Configurable Daytime Running Lamps Video Link\*](#)

# Interior Lighting

## SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



## SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



**Note:** Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

## SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

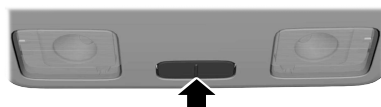
**Note:** If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

## INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function turns the courtesy and luggage compartment lamps on or off.

### SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

**Note:** If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

## ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

# Interior Lighting

---

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

### SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Ambient Light**.
4. Switch **Ambient Light** on or off.

### ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the slider left or right.

# Windows

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### Resetting One-Touch Up

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until you fully close the door window. Continue to hold the window control switch for a few seconds after you close the window.
2. Release the window control switch.
3. Press and hold the window control switch until you fully open the door window.
4. Release the window control switch.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until you fully close the window.
6. Test for correct window operation by carrying out the one-touch down and one-touch up features.

### Accessory Delay

When you switch the ignition off, the window switches remain operational for several minutes or until you open either front door.

## WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

# Windows

## OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the window control switch within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

**Note:** *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

**Note:** *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.

3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

**Note:** *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

## LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



**WARNING:** When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

# Interior Mirror

---

## INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

## AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

### WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or when you shift into reverse (R).

### AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

**Note:** A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

## Exterior Mirrors

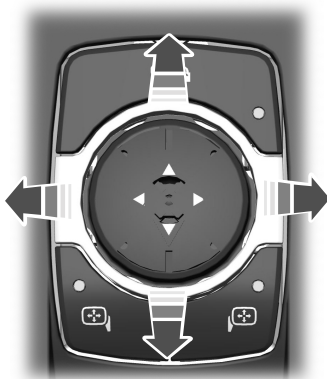
### ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Right-hand mirror.



To adjust your mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

### FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

# Moonroof

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUNSHADE

### Opening the Sunshade



**WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the sunshade and get caught in a closing sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof.

The sunshade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the rear of the control.

### Closing the Sunshade



**WARNING:** When closing the sunshade, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** If an obstruction is detected, press the switch a second time and reverse the sunshade immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof.

The sunshade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the front of the control.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF

### Opening the Moonroof



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the moonroof and could become trapped in a closing moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof.



# Moonroof

## Closing the Moonroof



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the moonroof immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

## VENTING THE MOONROOF



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press and release the front of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

## MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

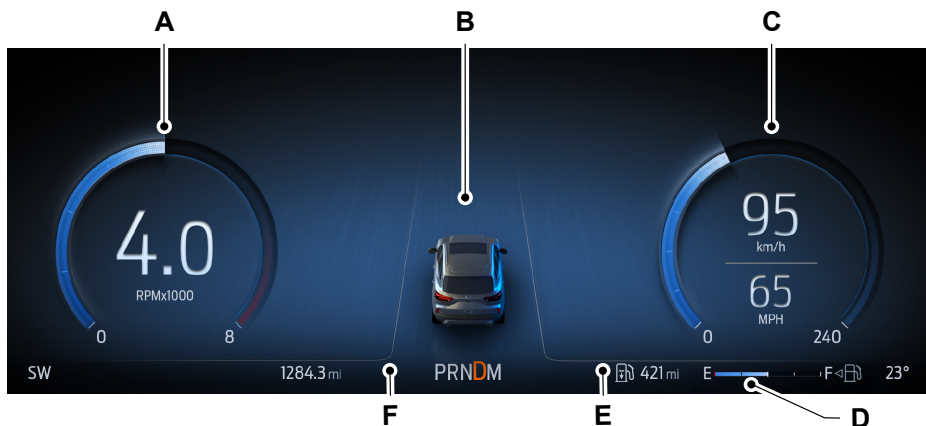
The moonroof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

### OVERRIDING MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

Press and hold the close switch within two seconds after the moonroof comes to a stop.

## Instrument Cluster

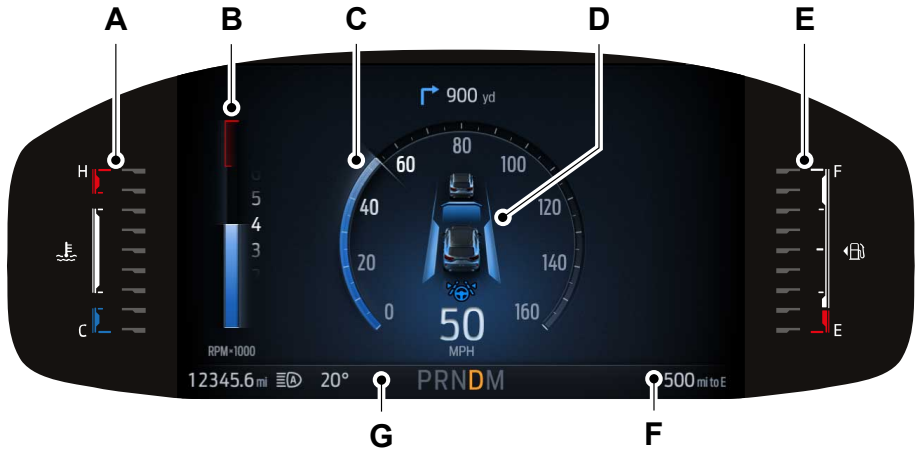
### INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™/2.0L ECOBOOST™, VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Tachometer.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Distance to empty.
- F Information bar.

## Instrument Cluster

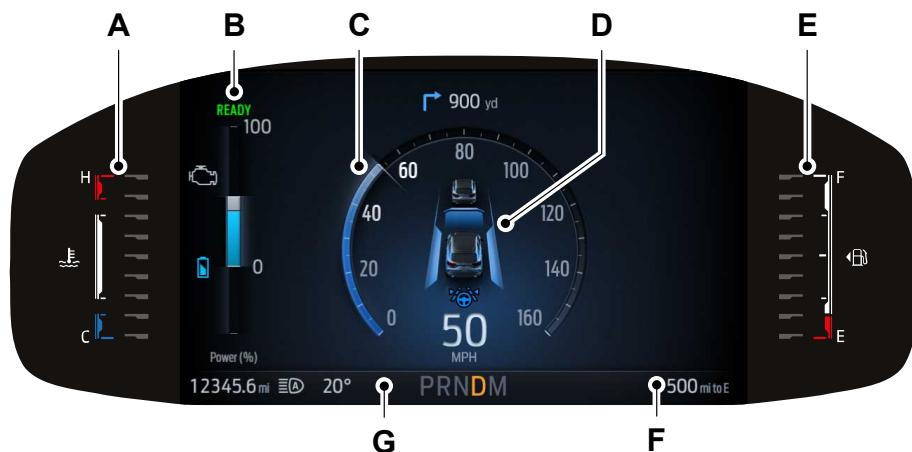
### INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™/2.0L ECOBOOST™, VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Tachometer.
- C Speedometer.
- D Instrument cluster display.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Distance to empty.
- G Information bar.

## Instrument Cluster

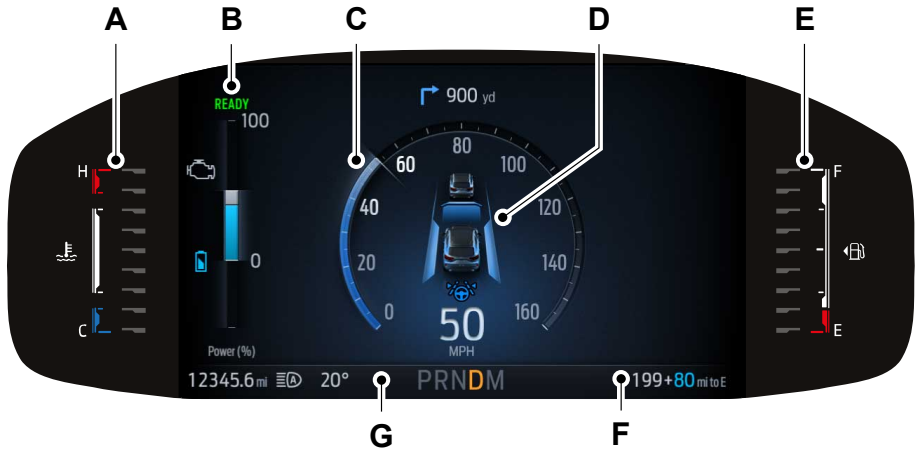
### INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV), VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Power gauge.
- C Speedometer.
- D Instrument cluster display.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Distance to empty.
- G Information bar.

## Instrument Cluster

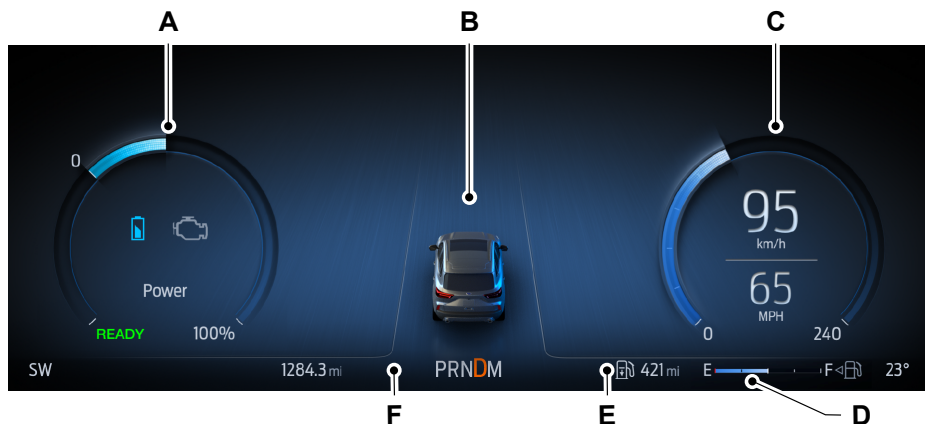
### INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Power gauge.
- C Speedometer.
- D Instrument cluster display.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Vehicle driving range.
- G Information bar.

## Instrument Cluster

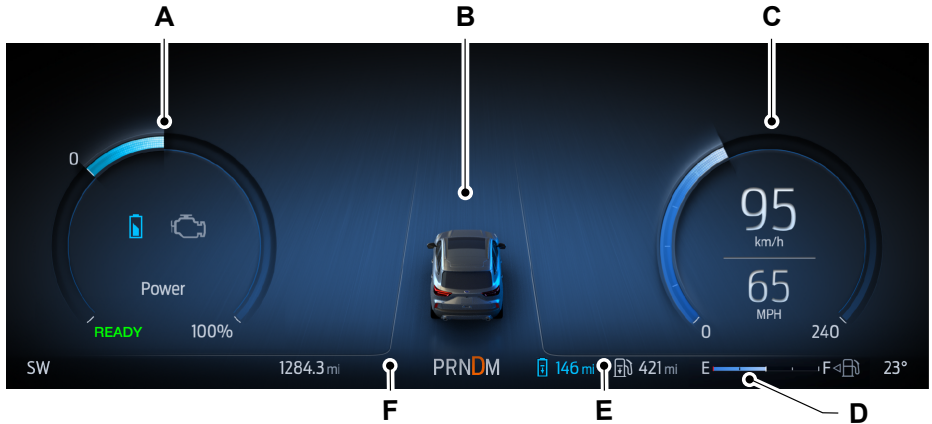
### INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV), VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Power gauge.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Distance to empty.
- F Information bar.

## Instrument Cluster

### INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Power gauge.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Vehicle driving range.
- F Information bar.

### TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

# Instrument Cluster

---

## POWER GAUGE

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. The high voltage battery power and engine power contributions are distinguished by color and added together to indicate total power to the wheels. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

## SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

## FUEL GAUGE

### WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

### FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

### LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

### WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km).

**Note:** The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

### WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

### VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by such as:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

**Note:** It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery or fill your tank.



# Instrument Cluster

**Note:** Electric range is lower in cold temperatures due to reduced energy capacity in the high voltage battery. Set a departure time and cabin temperature to maintain battery temperature for best range and performance. See **Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences** (page 207).

## Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

## Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

## ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

## WHAT IS THE INFORMATION BAR

The information bar displays information related to the ambient air temperature, odometer, compass, indicators and warning lamps.

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

### Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Battery



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Brake System



It illuminates when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is released. If the parking brake is released, this indicates low brake fluid level or the brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Indicators may vary depending on region.

### Door Ajar



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door is open.

# Instrument Cluster

## Electric Park Brake



It illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



## Engine or Motor Coolant Temperature



If it illuminates, safely stop your vehicle and switch your vehicle off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Fasten Seatbelt



It illuminates and a tone sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

## Fasten Rear Seatbelt



It illuminates and a tone sounds until you fasten the rear seatbelts.

## High Voltage Electric System Failure



It illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes your vehicle to shutdown or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

## Hood Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Liftgate Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the liftgate is not completely closed.

## Low Beam Warning



It illuminates when the low beam headlamp requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Low Fuel Level



It illuminates when the fuel level is low.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



It illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If illuminated, check your tire pressure as soon as possible. If it begins to flash at anytime, have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Low Washer Fluid



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the engine is off, this is normal operation. If it illuminates when the engine is on this indicates that the emission control system requires service. If it flashes, have your vehicle checked immediately. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 176).

## Oil Pressure



It illuminates when the engine oil pressure is low.

# Instrument Cluster

## Powertrain Fault



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Vehicle Plugged In (If Equipped)



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

### Adaptive Cruise Control



See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 259).

### Automatic High Beam Control



See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 94).

### Auto Hold



See **Auto Hold** (page 233).



### Auto-Start-Stop



See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 186).

## Blind Spot Monitor



See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 289).

## Cruise Control



See **Cruise Control** (page 257).

## EV Charge



## EV Later



See **EV Later** (page 274).

## EV Now



See **EV Now** (page 275).

## Front Airbag



See **Airbags** (page 50).

## Front Fog Lamps



See **Using the Front Fog Lamps** (page 92).

## High Beam



See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 89).

## Lamps On



See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 89).

# Instrument Cluster

---

## Ready to Drive



See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators** (page 179).

## Stability Control



See **Stability Control** (page 237). See **Traction Control** (page 235).



## Turn Signal



See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 91).

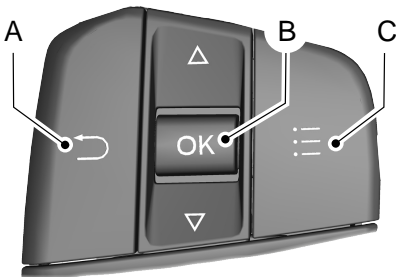
# Instrument Cluster Display

## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

### Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

### OK Button

Press to make a selection.

## Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

## Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip
Audio
Phone
Navigation
Settings
Head-Up Display (HUD)

# Instrument Cluster Display

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Trip/Energy
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip
Audio
Navigation
Phone
Settings
Head-Up Display (HUD)

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

**Note:** The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.

Configure MyView
Power Distribution
Trailer Light Status
Battery Charge
Now Playing
Navigation
Trip 1
Trip 2
This Trip
Electric Economy
Fuel Economy
Eco Coach
EV Coach
Tire Pressure

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.

## Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Left Gauge**.

# Instrument Cluster Display

5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

**Note:** The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.

Configure MyView
Power Distribution
Trailer Lights Status
Calm Screen
Trip 1
Trip 2
This Trip
Electric Economy
Fuel Economy
Eco Behavior
EV Coach

Configure MyView
Tire Pressure
Battery Charge
Driver Assistance

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.

### Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display Setup**.
4. Select **Gauge Style**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE

You can change the language using the touchscreen.

1. Press **General**.
2. Press **Language**.
3. Select a language.

**Note:** Available languages vary by region.

### CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

You can change the measurement unit using the touchscreen.

1. Press **General**.
2. Press **Measurement Units**.
3. Select a measurement unit.

# Instrument Cluster Display

## CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

You can change the temperature unit using the touchscreen.

1. Press **General**.
2. Press **Temperature Units**.
3. Select a temperature unit.

## CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

You can change the tire pressure unit using the touchscreen.

1. Press **General**.
2. Press **Tire Pressure Units**.
3. Select a pressure unit.

## FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

This display comes with an instant fuel economy gauge, along with the average fuel economy. The gauge continuously averages the fuel economy since your last reset.

For plug-in hybrid vehicles, the system includes both the electric only and the hybrid operation in the calculation. More electric only driving results in a greater average fuel economy.

When the gasoline engine is off, changes from the instant fuel economy gauge to an electric driving message.

**Note:** Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.

**Note:** Fuel economy display is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116). See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 117).

## FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

**Note:** Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.

## EV COACH

EV coach can help you get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving capabilities.

**Note:** EV coach is a selectable screen.

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine turns on.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is blue. This means you are in electric operation and the engine is off.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means you are in hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.



# Instrument Cluster Display

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal, a green or white solid bar displays indicating the power being used to slow down your vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow your vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

## ELECTRIC ECONOMY

This screen shows your average driving distance per kilowatt-hour of electricity used on your plug-in hybrid vehicle. The value is calculated only when your available electric range is being used and the gasoline engine is off.

Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric economy, the higher your distance per full charge.

Your electric economy is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best economy is achieved with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.

**Note:** *Electric economy is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116). See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 117).*

## BATTERY CHARGE

Displays a high voltage battery gauge and an estimate of available electric driving range. The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric only driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge (plugging your vehicle in). When the fill reaches empty the powertrain system will automatically switch to hybrid operation. See **How Does a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work** (page 181).

## BRAKE COACH

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

**Note:** *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 115).

## TRIP SUMMARY

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

# Instrument Cluster Display

---

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen. See **Trip Data** (page 121).

## VEHICLE CHARGING STATUS

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle when plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your charge settings through the touchscreen.

# Trip Computer

---

## ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116).

## ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu.

## RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## TRIP DATA

### Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off.

**Note:** *Trip 1 and 2 are selectable screens. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 121).*

### This Trip

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip resets each time you start your vehicle.

**Note:** *This trip is a selectable screen. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 121).*

# Head Up Display

---

## WHAT IS THE HEAD UP DISPLAY

The system displays information on a display screen in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

## SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.
3. Switch **Head-Up Display (HUD)** on or off.

## SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.
3. Switch **Head-Up Display (HUD)** on or off.

## HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.
3. Select **Adjustment**.

# Head Up Display

Menu Item	Action
Adjustment	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Position	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical position of the blue frame. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that you can see all of the blue frame.</li> <li>• Do not physically move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Brightness	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the brightness of the display screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system adjusts the brightness based on how dark it is. If you set the brightness to a high level, the system reduces the brightness at night.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Vertical Size	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical size of the display screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A small vertical size could be more suitable if you sit in a high position.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

**Note:** When you save a memory preset position, your current HUD settings are also saved to that memory preset position. See **Memory Function** (page 157).

## HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.
3. Select **Adjustment**.

# Head Up Display

Menu Item	Action
Adjustment	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Position	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical position of the blue frame. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that you can see all of the blue frame.</li> <li>• Do not physically move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Brightness	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the brightness of the display screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system adjusts the brightness based on how dark it is. If you set the brightness to a high level, the system reduces the brightness at night.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Vertical size	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical size of the display screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A small vertical size could be more suitable if you sit in a high position.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

**Note:** When you save a memory preset position, your current HUD settings are also saved to that memory preset position. See **Memory Function** (page 157).

## HEAD UP DISPLAY INDICATORS



The indicator displays in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** The head up display indicator could illuminate to supplement an information message.

# Head Up Display

## HEAD UP DISPLAY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEAD UP DISPLAY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Head Up Display System Fault See Manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head Up Display To Position Use the Information Display	Press the button on the steering wheel or center console. The head up display menu appears in the instrument cluster display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

# Remote Start

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- The ignition is on.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- Remote start is not enabled.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if the fuel level is low.

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Remote Start** on or off.

**Note:** To remote start with FordPass, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 433).

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** The turn signal lamps flash twice.

**Note:** The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

**Note:** The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

**Note:** The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

## EXTENDING THE REMOTE START DURATION

To extend the remote start duration during remote start, do the following:



Press the button on the remote control.



# Remote Start



Within three seconds, press the button on the remote control.

Within three seconds, press the button again.

If the duration is set to 15 minutes, the duration extends by another 15 minutes. This provides a total of 30 minutes.

**Note:** Remote start can only be extended once.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts, or one remote start with an extension, are allowed. To reset the restart procedure switch the vehicle to on, then to off.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

### Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 72°F (22°C).

**Note:** If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

### Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.

4. Press **Seats**.
5. Press a setting.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

### Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

### Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 72°F (22°C).

**Note:** If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

# Remote Start

---

## Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats and Steering Wheel**.
5. Press a setting.

**Note:** *If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.*

**Note:** *You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

## Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

### SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

### SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

### SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

**Note:** To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

### SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

**Note:** When maximum defrost is on, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

### SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



**Note:** Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

**Note:** When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.

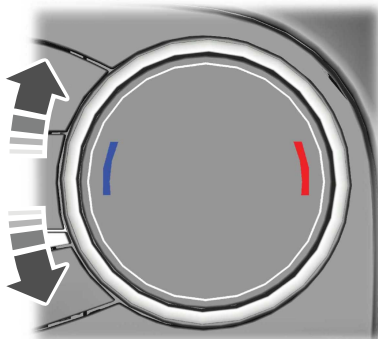
## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the control on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

**Note:** This control also sets the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Turn the control on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

**Note:** When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

**Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/  
Automatic Temperature Control**

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

**AUTO MODE INDICATORS**

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

<b>Auto Mode Indicator Status</b>	<b>Description</b>
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

## SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button.

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.

## **Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control**

---

2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

### SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

### SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

### SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

**Note:** To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

### SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

### SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.



## Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

### SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

**Note:** In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

### SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

**Note:** You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 135).

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

### SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

**Note:** You can press + or - to set the temperature.

### DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

#### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

## Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

### AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

## SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

**Note:** When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

**Note:** Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

## Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

## Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

## Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

## IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options, the controls may look different from what you see here.

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

**Note:** To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Turn the temperature control clockwise past the highest setting to maximize defrosting.

**Note:** The temperature control springs back to the highest setting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise past the lowest setting to maximize cooling.

**Note:** The temperature control springs back to the lowest setting.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

## SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF

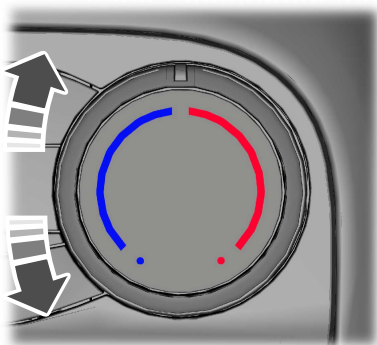


Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Turn the control.

**Note:** Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

**Note:** When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

---

2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.



# Interior Air Quality

## WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

## LOCATING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

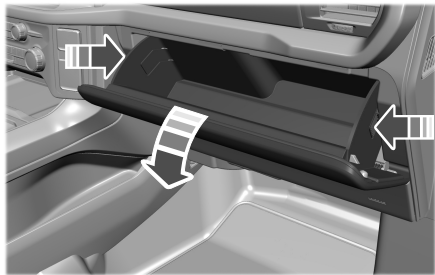
## REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Press the tab on each side.
3. Fully lower the glove compartment.
4. Pull the glove compartment toward you.

## REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR

### MANUALLY REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR

Open auto air refresh screen.

Select **Cabin Refresh**.

### AUTOMATICALLY REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR

If the cabin air recirculates for longer than 35 minutes, the system refreshes the cabin air. It returns to the previous setting after a short period of time.

### Refreshing the Interior Air Upon Start

The system may flow fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents when starting your vehicle under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle has been off for more than 30 minutes.
- The temperature inside your vehicle is higher than 75.2°F (24°C).

Ignition Start	Remote Start
The climate control system positions the air inlet door for outside air entry for approximately one minute. You may choose to turn on the climate control front blower at this time to help reduce odors.	The climate control system pulls outside air into the cabin and pushes cabin air out through cabin exhaust vents for approximately one minute.

## Front Seats

### FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

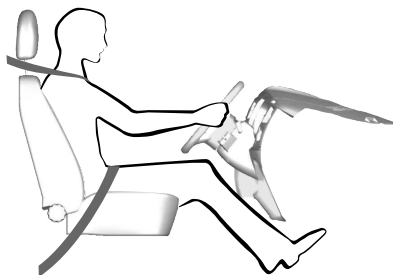


**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

### SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

## Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

### MANUAL SEATS

#### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The front seat head restraints consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

#### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

To tilt the head restraint (if equipped):

## Front Seats



1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the preferred position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, untilted position.

**Note:** Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

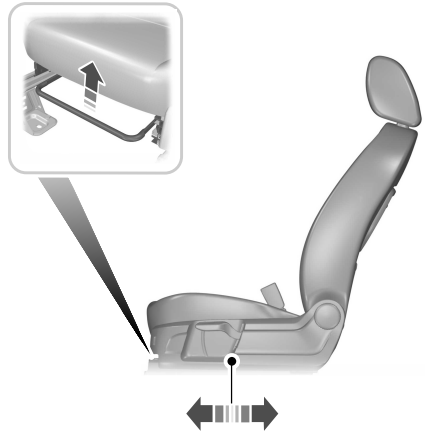
### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.

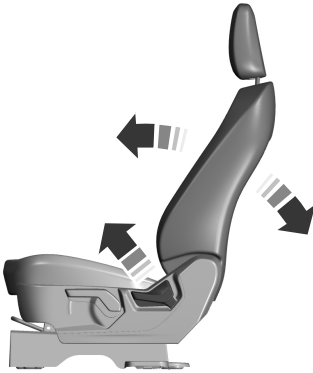


### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

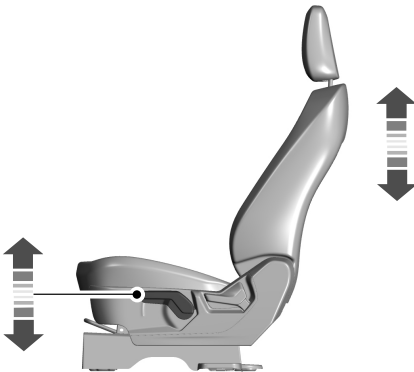


**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

## Front Seats



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



### POWER SEATS

#### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The front seat head restraints consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

#### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

## Front Seats



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

To tilt the head restraint (if equipped):



1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the preferred position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, untilted position.

**Note:** Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

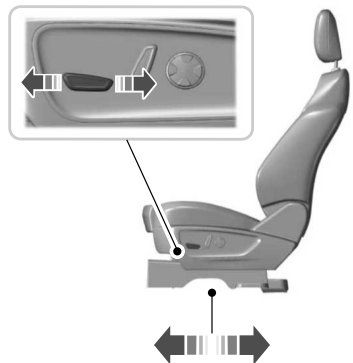
### REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

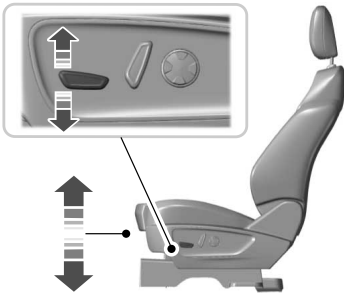
Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

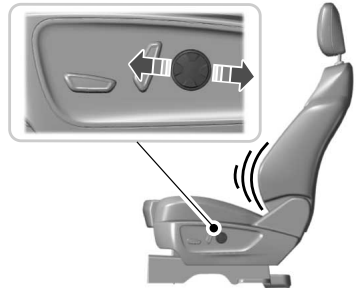


## Front Seats

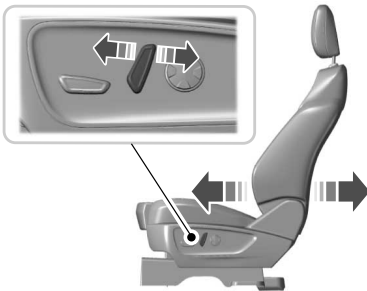
### ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



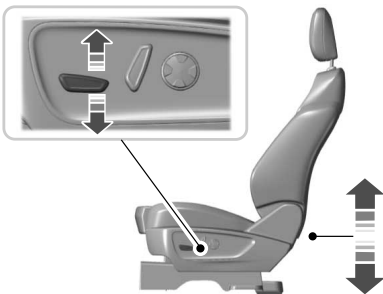
### ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT (if Equipped)



## HEATED SEATS

### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

**⚠ WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## Front Seats



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

**Note:** *The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

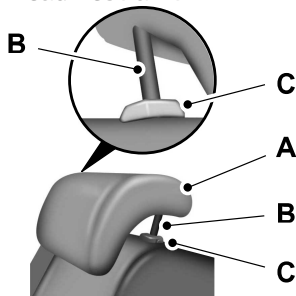


# Rear Seats

## MANUAL SEATS

### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

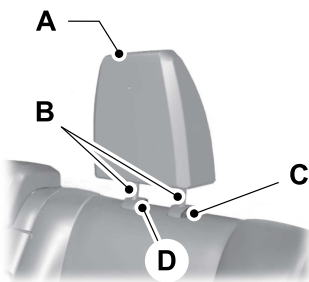
#### Center Head Restraint



The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

#### Outermost Head Restraint



The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.

- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

## Rear Seats

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before installing the head restraint.
2. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seat backward.

### FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

## Rear Seats

---



With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seat backrest forward. You may need to lower the center head restraint first.

### UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** When unfolding the seat, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Pull the seat backrest up to unfold it.

# Rear Occupant Alert System

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

**Note:** *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

# Rear Occupant Alert System

**Note:** It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Select **Alert & Horn** or **Alert Only** or **Off**.

**Note:** The default setting is **Alert Only**.

**Note:** If you choose **Alert Only**, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

**Note:** Performing a vehicle system reset causes the system to switch on again.

## Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Switch **Child Seat Installed** on or off.

**Note:** The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a latch system baby seat.

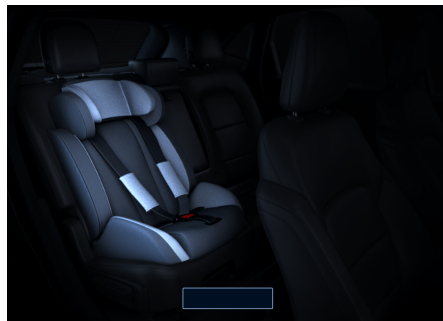
Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

## Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

**Note:** Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

# Rear Occupant Alert System

---

## **REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS**

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

# Memory Function

## WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.
- Optional power steering column.
- Optional power adjustable pedals.

## MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



**WARNING:** Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

## LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory function buttons are on the driver door.

## SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
3. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

## RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

Press and release the preset button.

**Note:** You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on and the vehicle is not moving.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your remote control if you linked it to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked remote control is present.

Using a linked remote control to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat to the easy entry position.

**Note:** Pressing any active memory feature adjustment control, or any preset buttons during a memory recall cancels the operation.

## Linking a Preset Position to your Remote Control or Passive Key

Your vehicle can save the preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or passive keys.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory features to the position you prefer.

## Memory Function

---

2. Press and hold a preset button for five seconds. A tone sounds after two seconds. Continue holding until you hear a second tone.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in Step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

**Note:** *If more than one linked remote control or intelligent access key is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.*



# Garage Door Opener

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER INTRODUCTION

### HomeLink Wireless Control System

The universal garage door opener replaces the common handheld garage door opener with a three-button transmitter integrated into the driver-side sun visor.



### How Does The Garage Door Opener Work

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. You can program garage doors as well as entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

### Garage Door Opener Limitations

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out, or quit, after several seconds – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal. U.S. gate operators time-out in the same manner.

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER PRECAUTIONS AND FREQUENCIES

### Garage Door Opener Precautions

**WARNING:** Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

### FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

# Garage Door Opener

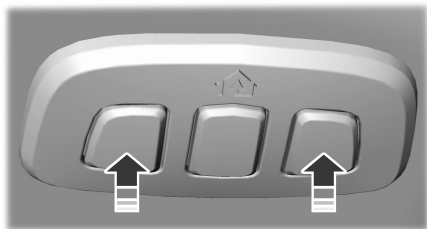
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance. This transmitter must be at least 8 in (20 cm) from the user and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## PROGRAMMING THE GARAGE DOOR OPENER

To clear all stored codes in the garage door opener in your vehicle, use the **clear** function. To override one button, use the **reprogram** function.

**Note:** Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.

### Clearing the Garage Door Opener



To clear all stored codes in the garage door opener in the vehicle:

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the indicator above the buttons flashes rapidly.
2. When the indicator flashes, release the buttons.

**Note:** This clears all stored codes. You cannot erase individual buttons.

**Note:** You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after they have been initially programmed, you must either clear all codes, or reprogram each individual button.

**Note:** We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons.

### Reprogramming the Garage Door Opener

If a button on your garage door opener has already been programmed, you can override it. To program a device to a previously trained button:

1. Press and hold the desired button for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator begins to flash.
2. Without releasing the button, proceed to Step 3 of **Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Handheld Transmitter**.

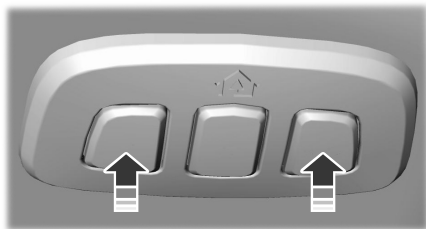
### Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Handheld Transmitter

**Note:** The programming steps below assume you are programming a HomeLink that was not previously programmed. If your HomeLink was previously programmed, you may need to **clear** or **reprogram** your HomeLink buttons.

**Note:** Put a new battery in the handheld transmitter. This allows for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

**Note:** Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.

# Garage Door Opener



To program your in-vehicle HomeLink function button with your handheld transmitter:

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, switch your vehicle on, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Press and release one of the three HomeLink function buttons that you would like to program.

**Note:** The indicator should begin to flash. If the indicator does not flash, press and hold the function button for 20 seconds until the indicator begins to flash.

3. Hold your handheld garage door transmitter 1–3 in (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.
4. Press and hold the handheld transmitter button you want to program while watching the indicator on HomeLink. Continue to hold the handheld button until the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly or is continuously on.

**Note:** You may need to use a different method if you live in Canada or have difficulties programming your gate operator or garage door opener.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door.

**Note:** If the indicator stays on, the programming is complete.

**Note:** If the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly, repeat Step 5.

**Note:** If your device still does not operate, you must program your garage door.

6. To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1–4.

**Note:** Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.

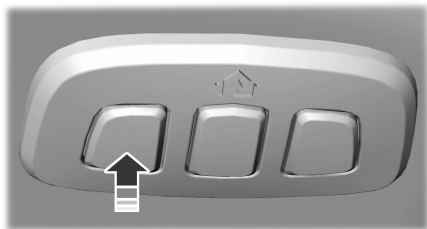
## Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Garage Door Opener Motor

**Note:** Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.



1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
2. Return to your vehicle.

# Garage Door Opener



3. Press and hold one of the three HomeLink function buttons you want to program for two seconds, then release.
4. Repeat Step 3. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

## Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Gate Opener Motor

### Gate Operator / Canadian Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time-out (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to time-out in the same manner.

**Note:** *If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised that you unplug the device during the **cycling** process to prevent possible overheating.*

1. Press and release your handheld transmitter, **every two seconds**, until the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly or is continuously on.

2. Release the handheld transmitter button.
3. Press and hold the HomeLink function button you want to program for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door.

**Note:** *If the indicator stays on, the programming is complete.*

**Note:** *If the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly, repeat Step 3.*

4. To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1–4.

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER ADDITIONAL ASSISTANCE

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

# USB Ports

## LOCATING THE USB PORTS

### Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

**Note:** These USB ports can also charge devices.

**Note:** Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

**Note:** We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

### Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Behind the first row seats.
- In the cargo area.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.



Press the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

## CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

# USB Ports

---

## Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

## Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

# Power Outlet

---

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

- On the passenger side floor panel.
- 3rd row on the quarter trim panels.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.
- Using devices for extended periods may require starting and running the engine to recharge the battery.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the front of the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

# Wireless Accessory Charger

## WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



**WARNING:** Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

**Note:** During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

## LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console.



E265426



# Wireless Accessory Charger

---

## CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

**Note:** *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

**Note:** *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

# Storage

---

## CUP HOLDERS

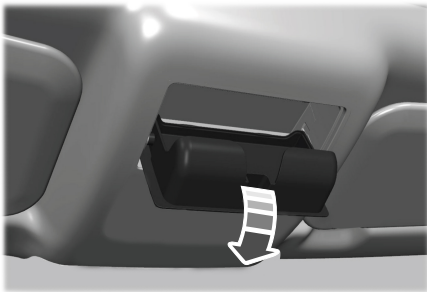
### CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## GLASSES HOLDER

### LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER



The glasses holder is in the overhead console. Press near the rear edge of the door to open.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

**Note:** If you use your vehicle regularly above the altitude of 5,000 ft (1,524 m) and under the temperature of -4.0°F (-20°C), it is recommended to use the alternative engine oil. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 412).

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## IGNITION SWITCH



**Note:** Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

**Note:** Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

## Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

## Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

## Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



## Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

## Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

**Note:** Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.

## Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

**Note:** A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
  - Make sure that the parking brake is on.
  - Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).
1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position **III**.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

## STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

### READY

When you start your vehicle, a green indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.



3. Turn the key to position **III** and wait until the engine stops cranking.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.
5. Turn the key to position **III**.

## STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

**WARNING:** Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.

- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and engine block heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- If the engine block heater cord is under the hood, do not remove the wiring from its original location. Do not close the hood on the extension wiring.
- Park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- Firmly connect the engine block heater cord and the extension cord.
- Check the extension cord for heat anywhere when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle. The protective cover seals the terminals of the engine block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Check the engine block heater system for proper operation before winter.

## HOW DOES THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER WORK

The engine block heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 110 volt AC electrical source.

**Note:** The engine block heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C). We recommend the use of engine block heater to improve engine cold start performance.

## USING THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

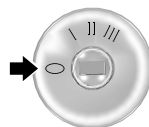
Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the engine block heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position 0.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.

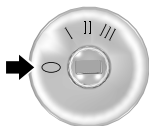


4. Press the push button ignition switch.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position **O**.

2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop is a feature that switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

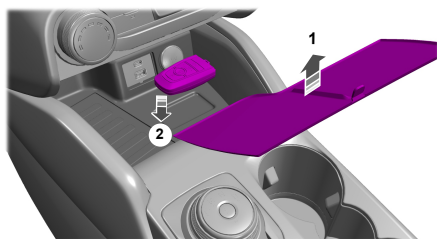
## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

## ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION



1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting System Fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No Key Detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

### Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

### Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.



3. Turn the key to position ||| and wait until the engine stops cranking.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.
5. Turn the key to position |||.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### Why is the engine speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5.0 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

## Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** *The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.*

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

## Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 175).

# Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

---

## WHAT IS A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A hybrid vehicle has an electric motor and a high voltage battery combined with a gasoline engine.

## HOW DOES A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

The hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide optimal performance and improved efficiency.

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

The gasoline engine starts and stops to provide power when required and to save fuel when not needed. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the gasoline engine to start or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Driving uphill.
- The high voltage battery charge level is low.
- Heating or cooling the vehicle interior in high or low outside temperatures.
- The gasoline engine is below normal operating temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Certain selectable drive modes could cause the engine to run. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 274).

Your hybrid vehicle also comes with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

You could also notice that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off during extended downhill driving. The engine stays on during this engine braking but is not using any fuel.

You could also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

**Note:** *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS

### READY

When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.


The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.

Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/  
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE  
INFORMATION –  
TROUBLESHOOTING

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE  
INFORMATION – WARNING  
LAMPS

 Illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE  
INFORMATION – INFORMATION  
MESSAGES

Message	Action
Stop Safely Now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE  
INFORMATION – FREQUENTLY  
ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if the vehicle runs out of fuel and the high voltage battery is out of charge?

- Refuel and start your vehicle normally. The engine will recharge the high voltage battery.

Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?

- The vehicle's computer determines if an engine start is required at key-on. It starts the engine when necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, if the high voltage battery is low, or if the outside temperature is low.

Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?

- Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline) fuel, but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).

Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?

- There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to make sure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emission. As the climate gets cooler, the engine-on time is extended.

Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?

- In order to make sure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct coolant temperature.

## Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

---

### PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION

#### WHAT IS A PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A plug-in hybrid electric vehicle combines a gasoline engine with an electric motor and rechargeable high voltage battery allowing you to use only electricity to power your vehicle.

#### HOW DOES A PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

Charging your vehicle adds electrical energy that propels the vehicle. Regularly plug in your vehicle to get optimal electric-only range capability from the high voltage battery. The system maximizes the use of electric-only operation in normal drive mode whenever possible. System conditions could require the engine to operate when necessary.

When the electric-only range reaches zero, the powertrain system switches to hybrid operation. This means that you have depleted the energy you gained from plugging in and charging your vehicle. Both the gasoline engine and electric motor power your vehicle and maximize fuel economy during hybrid operation. You receive some electric-only driving with hybrid operation as the powertrain system maintains the high voltage battery charge within functional limits.

### PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

The gasoline engine starts and stops to provide power when required and to save fuel when not needed. Restarting your vehicle is not required. Simply step on the accelerator when you are ready to drive. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the gasoline engine to start or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Driving uphill.
- The high voltage battery charge level is low.
- Heating or cooling the vehicle interior in high or low outside temperatures.
- The gasoline engine is below normal operating temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Certain drive modes could cause the engine to run. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 273).

**Note:** *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

Your plug-in hybrid electric vehicle has several EV drive modes to enhance your driving experience.

Your hybrid vehicle also comes with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

## Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

You could also notice that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off during extended downhill driving. The engine stays on during this engine braking but is not using any fuel.

You could also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

### PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS

#### READY

When you start your vehicle, a green ready indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.

The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.

Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

### WHAT IS LOW ENGINE USE MODE

Low engine use mode maintains proper engine lubrication at sufficient temperature and activates when you drive your vehicle with limited engine operation.

### HOW DOES LOW ENGINE USE MODE WORK

When in low engine use mode, your vehicle runs the engine as necessary. When low engine use mode begins, a message appears in the information display. If low engine use mode does not complete before you switch your vehicle off, it continues the next time you start your vehicle and the message reappears.

**Note:** *EV Now mode is not available when in low engine use mode.*

**Note:** *Cold temperatures affect the engine warm up time and the low engine use mode may operate more frequently.*

**Note:** *An oil change is not required but gives you the option of not running a low engine use cycle. Resetting the oil life monitoring system suspends the low engine use mode.*

### PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates if your vehicle's electrical system requires service to identify the cause for your vehicle to shut down or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/  
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**

**PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – INFORMATION  
MESSAGES**

Message	Action
Vehicle Plugged In ? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Unplug Prior to Starting Vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Engine Enabled Due to Defrost Setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.
Change EV mode for full defrost heat	Select either EV Later or EV Auto to enable full defrost. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine Enabled for System Performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to Enable Engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.
In Neutral Depletes HV Battery, Shift Out of Neutral for Full Vehicle Function	Displays when in neutral gear with the vehicle on. Shift out of neutral to maintain full vehicle function.
Stop Safely Now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**POWER FLOW**

**WHAT IS POWER FLOW**

The power flow shows how power is being used in the vehicle and also displays reasons for engine operation.

**HOW DOES POWER FLOW WORK  
-FULLHYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE  
(FHEV)**



The power flow information for your hybrid vehicle is available through the home screen or under Apps.

# Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

## Vehicle Operational States

Power flows to or from the front and rear wheels depending on operational state and driving conditions.

- **Idling:** The vehicle is running and in park (P). The engine and/or the high voltage battery are on.
- **Electric driving:** The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The high voltage battery provides power to the wheels.
- **Hybrid driving:** The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The engine and the high voltage battery provide power to the wheels.
- **Regenerative braking:** The vehicle is running in drive (D) and is slowing down. Power captured by the regenerative braking system is sent back to the high voltage battery.

## Engine On Due To

The following conditions help explain why the engine is on, and what you can do to allow all electric operation.

- **Drive power:** The engine is on due to accelerator pedal pressure or speed control activation. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
- **High speed:** The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for full electric operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric operation.
- **Heater setting:** The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or turn off the heater setting to return to electric operation.
- **Neutral gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in neutral (N). Shift out of neutral (N) to return to electric operation.

- **Engine cold:** The engine is on because it is cold. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the engine is sufficiently warm.
- **Battery charging:** The engine is on to charge the high voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the battery is charged.
- **Low gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in low (L). Shift out of low (L) to return to electric operation.
- **Normal operation:** The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Engine braking active:** The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric operation.
- **Battery temperature:** The engine is on due to high or low high voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Drive mode:** The engine is on due to the drive mode selection. Select an appropriate drive mode for electric only operation.

## HOW DOES POWER FLOW WORK - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



The power flow information for your plug-in hybrid vehicle is available through the Home screen or under Apps.

# Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

---

## Vehicle Operational States

Power flows to or from the front and rear wheels depending on operational state and driving conditions.

- **Idling:** The vehicle is running and in park (P). The engine and, or the high voltage battery are on.
- **Electric driving:** The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The high voltage battery provides power to the wheels.
- **Hybrid driving:** The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The engine and the high voltage battery provide power to the wheels.
- **Regenerative braking:** The vehicle is running in drive (D) and is slowing down. The regenerative braking system captures power and sends it back to the high voltage battery.
- **Charging:** The vehicle is plugged in and the high voltage battery is being charged.

## Engine On Due To

The following conditions help explain why the engine is on and what you can do to allow all electric operation.

- **Drive power:** The engine is on due to accelerator pedal pressure or speed control activation. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
- **High speed:** The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for full electric operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric operation.
- **Heater setting:** The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or switch off the heater setting to return to electric operation.
- **Neutral gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in neutral (N). Shift out of neutral gear to return to electric operation.
- **Engine cold:** The engine is on because it is cold. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the engine is sufficiently warm.
- **Battery charging:** The engine is on to charge the high voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the battery is sufficiently charged.
- **Low gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in low (L). Shift out of low (L) to return to electric operation.
- **Normal operation:** The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Low use:** The engine is on to maintain engine oil quality. The vehicle returns to electric operation when low engine use mode is complete. See **How Does Low Engine Use Mode Work** (page 182).
- **Engine braking active:** The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric operation.
- **Battery temperature:** The engine is on due to high or low high voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Drive mode:** The engine is on due to the drive mode selection. Select an appropriate drive mode for electric only operation.

# Auto-Start-Stop

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto Start/Stop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto Start/Stop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then Restart Engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Manual Restart Required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

# Auto-Start-Stop

---

## **AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Can I permanently switch the system off?**

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### **Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?**

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

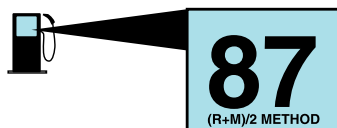
- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

## FUEL QUALITY

### SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL

#### Choosing the Right Fuel



Your vehicle operates on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

# Fuel and Refueling

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance. For additional information, refer to [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

**Note:** *Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.

- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

## Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel Vehicles

Flex fuel vehicles have one of the following identifiers:

- Yellow fuel filler cap.
- Yellow bezel around the fuel filler inlet.
- Yellow fuel filler housing.
- Yellow E85 label on the fuel tank filler door.

## LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

### FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



# Fuel and Refueling

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 190).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

**Note:** If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.

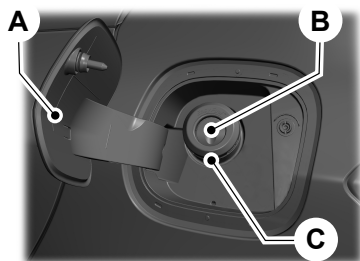
**Note:** You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

# Fuel and Refueling

## REFUELING

### REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

### REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

**WARNING:** Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

**WARNING:** Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

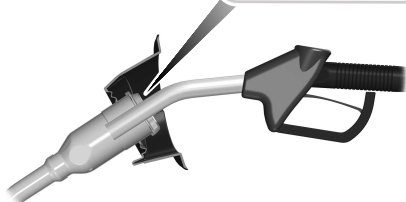
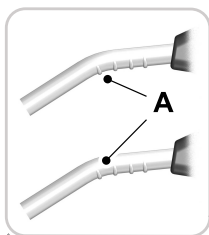
**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

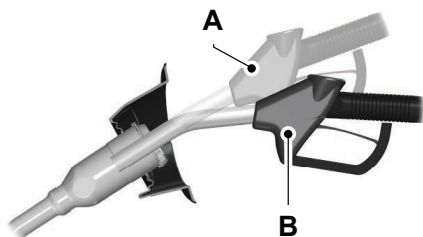
**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

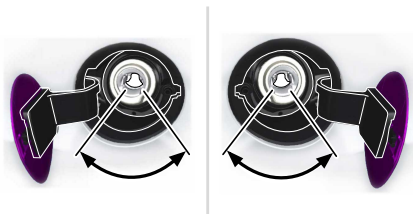
## Fuel and Refueling



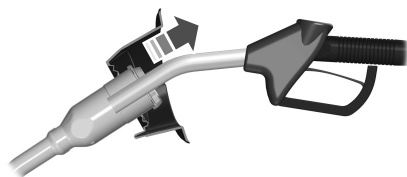
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

### REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

## Fuel and Refueling

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

**WARNING:** Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

**WARNING:** Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

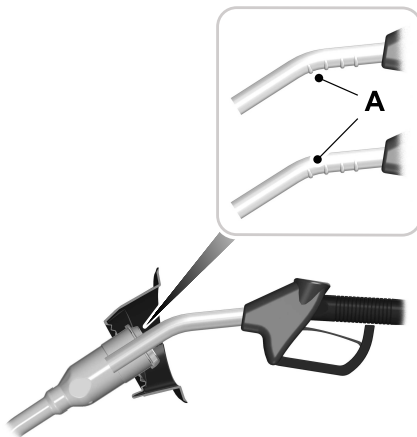
**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

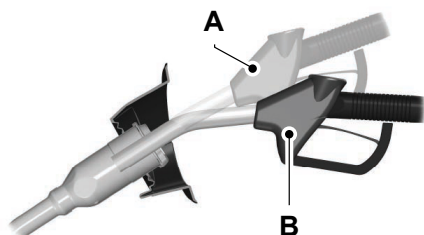


2. Press the button on the left side of the instrument panel next to the headlamp switch to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.

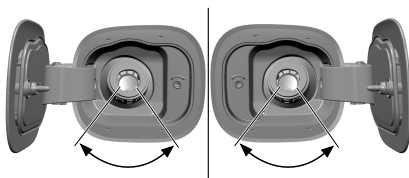


## Fuel and Refueling

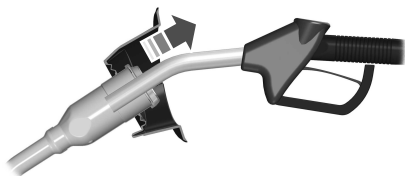
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait a few seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

**Note:** Leaving the fuel door open could set a check engine lamp. See **Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting** (page 197).

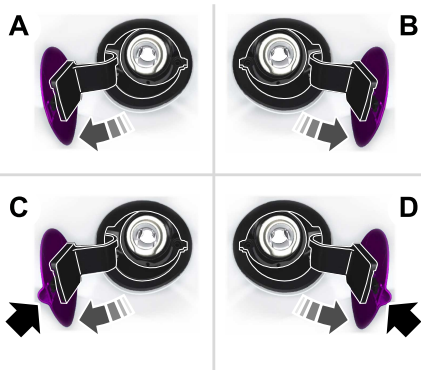
Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the left side of the instrument panel again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the left side of the instrument panel.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

### MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.

# Fuel and Refueling

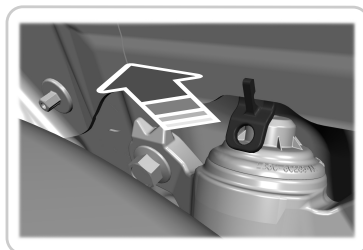


- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

**Note:** The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).

When using the manual override lever do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.



**Note:** The manual override lever is in the driver side rear wheel well area.

2. Pull the manual override lever.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.

**Note:** Only follow this procedure if the fuel filler door fails to open. If the problem remains, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY

### Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

## FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

## Fuel and Refueling

### FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	The information message appears while the fuel system is depressurizing with the fuel filler door closed. Wait for the fuel system to depressurize and for the fuel filler door to unlatch.
Fuel Door Open	The information message appears when the fuel system has depressurized and opened the fuel filler door. Fully open the fuel filler door to refuel and fully close the fuel filler door when refueling is complete.
Fuel door ajar Close fully to avoid Check engine light	Your vehicle is equipped with a sealed fuel system that requires the fuel filler door to be fully closed after refueling. This warning message appears when the fuel filler door is ajar. Please fully close the fuel filler door to avoid a "Check Engine" Light. If you see this message and a "Check Engine" lamp illuminates, please fully close the fuel filler door. The "Check Engine" Light should clear within five seconds. If the "Check Engine" light persists, please see your dealer.
Refuel Error See Manual	The information message appears when the fuel system fails to depressurize, or the fuel filler door fails to open. You could have to use the fuel filler door manual override lever when opening the fuel door.



# Catalytic Converter

## WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 328).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 189).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

**Note:** Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# High Voltage Battery - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

## WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power your vehicle.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VIDEOS

[Charge Station Setup Guide](#)

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

## WHAT IS AC CHARGING

AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the battery for longer battery life.

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.



**WARNING:** Do not use the dual-voltage charging cord in commercial garages.



**WARNING:** This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 18 in (450 mm) above the floor.



**WARNING:** The AC wall plug must fit firmly into the AC outlet. If the connection feels loose, worn or the AC outlet is damaged, please have a qualified electrician replace the AC outlet. Using a dual-voltage charging cord with a worn outlet may cause burns, property damage and increase the risk of electric shock or fire.



**WARNING:** Do not use the dual-voltage charging cord with an extension cord, two-prong adapter, surge protector, timer or other adapter. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock or fire.



**WARNING:** Do not allow charging equipment to be immersed in water or liquids. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, electric shock, or serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to open the charging equipment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment if it is faulty or has been damaged. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Install charging equipment in compliance with local regulations. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, electric shock, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. The wall outlet must be in good condition and meet up-to-date local codes. Have a qualified electrician check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock, personal injury, or death.



**WARNING:** Do not modify the dual-voltage charging cord plug. If the dual-voltage charging cord plug does not properly fit into the wall outlet, have a qualified electrician install the correct wall outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, or death.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT

- Read all the instructions before using this product.
- Supervise this device when in use around children.
- Do not put fingers into the electric vehicle connector.
- Do not use this product if the flexible power cord or electric vehicle cable has broken insulation, or any other signs of damage.
- Do not use this product if the enclosure or the electric vehicle connector is broken, cracked, open, or shows any other indication of damage.

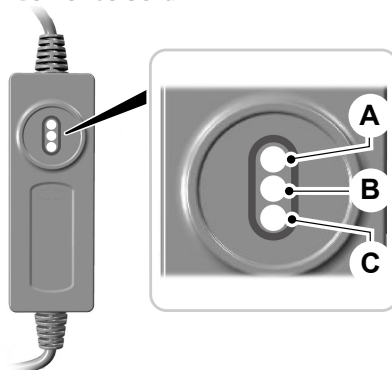
**Note:** Ground this product. If it malfunctions or breaks down, grounding provides a path of least resistance for electric current to reduce the risk of electric shock. This product comes with a cord having an equipment grounding conductor and a grounding plug. Make sure you plug it into an appropriate outlet that is properly installed and grounded in accordance with all local codes and ordinances.

**Note:** You need to plug the convenience cord into a dedicated outlet.

**Note:** Firmly fit the AC wall plug into the AC outlet. If the connection feels loose, worn or the AC outlet is damaged, please have a qualified electrician replace the AC outlet. Using a convenience cord with a worn outlet could cause burns, property damage and increase the risk of electric shock.

**Note:** Do not use the 120 volt convenience cord with an extension cord, two-prong adapter, surge protector, timer or other adapter.

## Convenience Cord



- A. Power.
- B. Fault.
- C. Check Outlet.

**CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE-** Use a three-prong AC outlet that is properly grounded, 15-20 amps or greater, and in good condition. Use a dedicated line. You cannot have other appliances connected to the same circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

**Note:** Make sure the electrical source meets the requirements for the high-voltage batteries to charge.

Make sure that the convenience cord is completely unwrapped before charging. Always plug the cord into the AC outlet before connecting the charged coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

**Note:** When you plug the convenience cord into an outlet, use the following table to determine your vehicle charge status. If the power indicator light is off after plugging in the convenience cord, use a different outlet.

## Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Convenience Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
Off	Off	Off	If the LED indicators are off after plugging in the convenience cord and the plug is experiencing a no power condition from the wall outlet, use a different outlet.	Use a different wall outlet.
On	Off	Off	The convenience cord is plugged into the wall outlet and ready to charge your vehicle. Reference the charge port section below for information on vehicle charging.	No action required.
On	Flashing	On	The convenience cord AC plug is experiencing an overheating condition. The convenience cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. If the fault persists, you have a bad wall outlet.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	Off	Flashing	The convenience cord is charging at a reduced current rate due to a wall outlet over temperature condition.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	On	Flashing	The convenience cord AC plug has overheated. The cordset retry mode has been exhausted. Your vehicle is not charging. You have a bad wall outlet.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	Flashing	Off	The convenience cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. The convenience cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. Your vehicle is not charging.	Unplug and re-plug to vehicle charge port.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Convenience Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
On	On	Off	The convenience cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. The cordset retry mode has been exhausted. Your vehicle is not charging. Call for service.	Request vehicle service.
On	On/Two flash interval	Two flash interval	Missing ground at AC outlet. Your vehicle is not charging. The convenience cord is in retry mode.	Connect to a properly grounded AC outlet. If fault still exists for more than two minutes, return cordset for service.
On	On/Flashing	Off	The convenience cord is experiencing an internal fault. Call for service.	Wait two minutes. If fault is still present, request cordset service. Replace the cordset.

**Note:** If charging for your plug-in vehicle fails, please call the Customer Relationship Center, or click on Call for support or Live chat at our website.

## MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

**Note:** Do not hold the convenience cord by the flexible power cable.

Make sure that you completely wrap the convenience cord after charging.

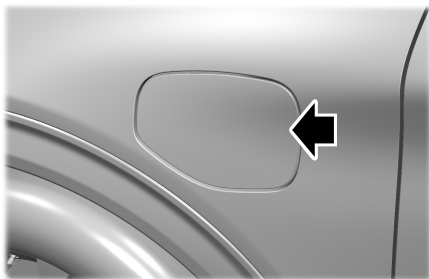
When complete, replace the convenience cord in the luggage compartment.

**Note:** Store the convenience cord in a clean, dry place between the temperature of -40–194°F (-40–90°C).

## LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is between the front left-hand side door and the front left-hand wheel well. To open, press the center right edge of the charge port door, and then release.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



**Note:** Do not force the charge port door open or closed. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

## CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

The charge status indicator around the charge port indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

We use the color white as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in, unplugging or pressing the charge times button.

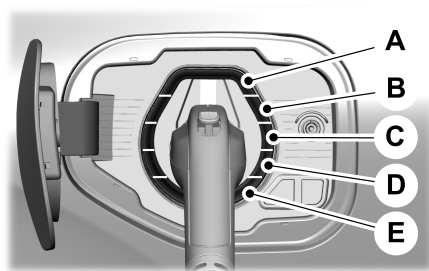
We use the color blue when you plug the vehicle in and are either charging or waiting to charge.

We use the color orange to indicate charge faults.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When the bottom zone is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When the bottom zone illuminates and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.

- When two zones illuminate and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When three zones illuminate and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When four zones illuminate and the top zone is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.



- A. 80%-100% state of charge.
- B. 60%-80% state of charge.
- C. 40%-60% state of charge.
- D. 20%-40% state of charge.
- E. 0%-20% state of charge.

**Note:** When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly lit up in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then the bottom three zones light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to preferred charge settings or charge station actions.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

**Note:** If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is on. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, then you can switch it off. See charge port light settings under access menu in features on your touchscreen.

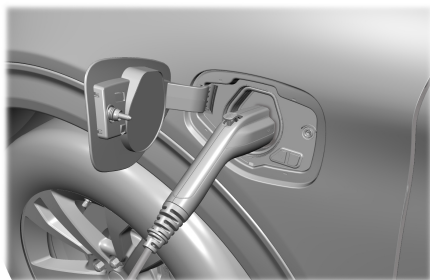
## AC CHARGING

### CONNECTING THE CHARGER



To charge the high-voltage battery:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P).
2. Press the center right edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle. Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler.



4. Verify that the cord acknowledgment feature activates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle. The charge status indicator lights up each zone alternately from bottom to top and from bottom to top again.

5. If using a charging station, follow the instructions on the charge station to begin the charging process.



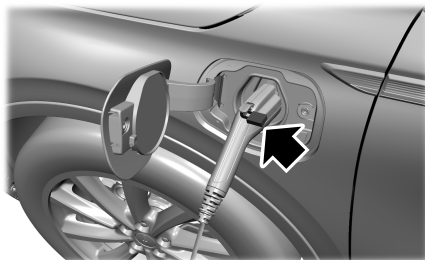
**Note:** You can identify charging faults by the color orange on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.

**Note:** If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator lights up solidly in an orange color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charging coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, check the charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.

**Note:** Put your vehicle in park (P) to charge, and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

### Locking the Charging Coupler





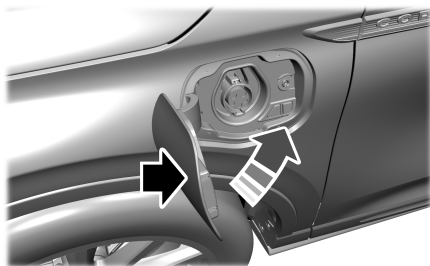
# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

**Note:** You need a padlock or a combination lock with a shackle diameter of 0.2 in (5 mm) or less, and the straight portion of the shackle of 1.0 in (25.4 mm) of length or more.

1. Insert the lock through the hole in the charging coupler button.
2. Lock the padlock or combination lock.

## STOPPING CHARGING

1. If you have installed a padlock or combination lock, remove it.
2. Press the button on the charging coupler.
3. While holding the button, remove the charging coupler from the charge port receptacle.



4. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close it.

**Note:** Do not pull the wall plug from the wall when your vehicle is charging. Doing so could damage the outlet and the cord.

## SETTING THE CHARGING SCHEDULE AND PREFERENCES



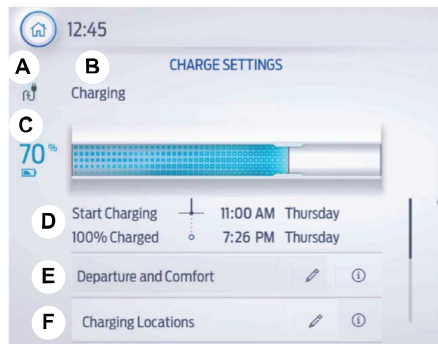
You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a max charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

To view your charge settings:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press Charge Settings on the touchscreen.

## Charge Settings Screen



- A Charging status icon.  
B Charging status.  
C High voltage battery state of charge.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

- D Charging time information.
- E Departure and comfort settings.
- F Charging location settings.

## Charging Status Icons

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.



Not charging due to a fault.



Not currently charging.



Charging.



Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

## Charging Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.

Charge Status	Action
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the FordPass app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charge Status	Action
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized dealer.
Charging station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charging station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charging station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station.

## High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

## Charging Time Information

When charging, the start and estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the start and end times display based on known charging infrastructure.

**Note:** Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times. See **Charging Your Vehicle** (page 201).

## Departure and Comfort

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are.

By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charging time preferences to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

**Note:** By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

**Note:** You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.

## Departure and Comfort Setup

Follow these steps to set departure and comfort level preferences.



The edit button for departure and comfort setup is on the charge settings screen.

1. Press the edit button for departure and comfort.
2. Select a time.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

**Note:** Two time settings show for each day of the week on the departure times schedule screen.

3. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired time, cabin comfort level and days of the week to repeat.
4. Press save.

**Note:** Your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.

5. Press back to return to the main charge settings screen.

**Note:** The next departure time and cabin temperature display.

**Note:** Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on whether you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power could be used in addition to the charging power to heat the cabin.

## Charging Locations

Your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends.

This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

**Note:** Your vehicle charges during your preferred time windows. Charging outside these windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge limit set for this location by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in.

**Note:** You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.

## Charging Location Setup

Follow these steps to set time and charge level preferences for a charging location.



The edit button for charging locations is on the charge settings screen.

1. Press the edit button for charging locations.
2. On the charging locations screen select add new location.

**Note:** You can also edit settings for previously saved locations listed on this screen.

3. Select an address from the list of recent charge locations.
4. Confirm that this is the location you want to save with the help of the map view.

**Note:** Depending on the GPS location, the address on the navigation may not precisely match up with your charging location. Confirm on the map that the pin is in the expected location.

5. Edit the location name if desired and set a maximum charge limit.

**Note:** The name of locations cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.

**Note:** Charging stops when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge limit setting.

6. Press continue to schedule.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



7. Set preferred charging times for weekday and/or weekend by pressing and dragging along the 24 hour time wheel.

**Note:** You can set up to two blocks of time (charge windows).

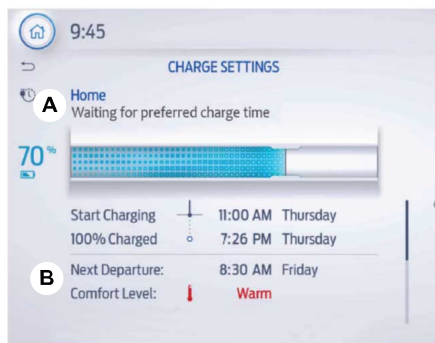
**Note:** Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

8. Press continue once you have your desired time settings for weekday and weekend.
9. The summary screen displays your settings for this location. Press save or press back to change your settings.

**Note:** Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings screen displays the location name. The charging times are based on your preferred time settings for that location plus the next departure time.

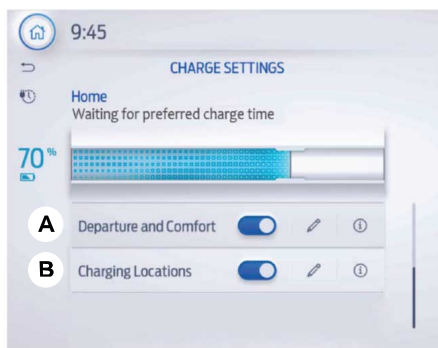
**Note:** Reaching your max charge limit by your next departure time is always the priority. When charging time preferences are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging immediately after plugging in. Charging pauses when the rest of the charge can be done within the preferred charging windows.

Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.



- A Charging location name.
- B Next departure time and cabin temperature.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



- A On/Off switch for departure and comfort.
- B On/Off switch for charging locations.

## Charging Location Name

Displays when your vehicle is at a saved charging location.

## Next Departure Time and Cabin Comfort Level

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

## On/Off Switch for Departure and Comfort

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times off and on. Switching off departure and comfort does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

## On/Off Switch for Charging Locations

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved charging location. Use this switch to turn your settings off and on for this location only. Switching off for this location does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

**Note:** *If the charging locations switch is off, the vehicle begins charging to 100% once plugged in.*

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

---

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Vehicle Plugged In ? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. Make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message before starting your vehicle.
Unplug Prior to Starting Vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Charge Station Fault See Manual	A charging fault has been detected. Check the charging cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	The charging station cannot communicate with your vehicle. Contact the station provider.

# Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

---

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does my vehicle have a hum or fan noise when charging?

- A hum or a fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. This is a normal operation as your vehicle is keeping the battery cool while charging.



# Automatic Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

**Note:** Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 226).

**Note:** Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P). See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 218).

**Note:** A tone could sound when you select park (P).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

### PARK (P)



**WARNING:** Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

**Note:** A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

### REVERSE (R)



**WARNING:** Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

### NEUTRAL (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

# Automatic Transmission

## DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

## LOW (L) - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

In low (L) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when the accelerator pedal is released.

**Note:** We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 317).

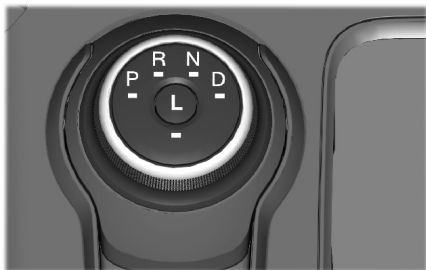
## LOW (L) - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

**Note:** We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 317).

## SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR

The selector is on the center console.



E224178

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.

2. Rotate the outer ring to select a position.

**Note:** The position illuminates on the selector.

**Note:** Your vehicle cannot shift from drive (D) to park (P) with a clockwise rotation. Your vehicle cannot shift from park (P) to drive (D) with a counterclockwise rotation.

3. Press the low (L) or manual (M) or sport (S) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

**P R N D L**

**Note:** The position could illuminate on the selector.

## SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

**Note:** Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

# Automatic Transmission

**Note:** If the battery has run out of charge, use an external power source.

**Note:** This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 225).

**Note:** If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Press the manual (M) or low (L) button.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

**Note:** You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

## Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

### Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

## TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

### HOW DOES TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE WORK

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

**Note:** You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with power on.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 218).

# Automatic Transmission

## TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

## ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** An instructional message appears.

5. Press the low (L) button.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.

## EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unfastened.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving** (page 174).

### AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

## Automatic Transmission

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

### GRADE ASSIST - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

#### HOW DOES GRADE ASSIST WORK

This feature helps maintain vehicle speed when driving down a slope. The system uses a combination of engine motoring and regenerative braking to maintain vehicle speed.

**Note:** *You could hear engine speed increasing and decreasing. This is normal operation.*

The system activates when all the following occur:

- Your vehicle is on a downhill slope.
- The selector is in drive (D).
- You release the accelerator pedal.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Transmission Not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typically after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Apply Park Brake Before Exiting the Vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be pressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Automatic Transmission

---

Message	Description
Select L To Confirm Stay In Neutral Mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Select M To Confirm Stay In Neutral Mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Stay in Neutral Mode Engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral Mode.

# All-Wheel Drive

## HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than those, could subject the vehicle to excess stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Using different size tires other than the provided spare could cause system damage or disable the all-wheel drive system.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD OFF	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD Malfunction Service Required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

# Brakes

## BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM INDICATORS

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



If the warning lamp illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The warning lamp also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



The warning lamp illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The warning lamp also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 357).



## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brakes** (page 222).

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 430).

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

# Brakes

## BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

## BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Is brake dust on the wheels normal?

Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 376).

### Will wet driving conditions effect my braking abilities?

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

### Is brake noise considered normal?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.

### When should you replace the brake fluid?

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance.

# Electric Parking Brake

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake and make sure your vehicle is in park (P). Power the vehicle off and remove the keys or remote control whenever you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The electric parking brake switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 215).

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

## MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

## Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.

# Electric Parking Brake

4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 328).

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 330).

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

#### Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

# Electric Parking Brake

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Maintenance Mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the brakes. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake System Overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park Brake Released	The electric parking brake is released.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Applied	The electric parking brake is applied.

# Reverse Brake Assist

## WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

## HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 1–7 mph (2–12 km/h).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

# Reverse Brake Assist

**Note:** The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

**Note:** You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

## SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Switch **Reverse Brake Assist** on or off.

**Note:** The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

**Note:** If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

**Note:** The default setting is on in some regions.

## OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

# Reverse Brake Assist

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays when the system applies the brakes and remains on for a few seconds.
Reverse Brake Assist Not Available See Manual	Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and cross traffic alert systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Fault	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.



# Reverse Brake Assist

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure the reverse brake assist is on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 229).
- Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- If your vehicle has the cross traffic alert system, make sure it is on. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 295).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Parking Aids** (page 241).
- Make sure the traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 235).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An anti-lock brake, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Reverse brake assist resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure the rear view camera and 360 degree camera are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the camera. If the message still appears after cleaning the camera, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, have the system checked.

- Make sure the cross traffic alert, rear parking aid and side parking aid sensors are not blocked or faulty. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 295). See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 242). See **Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors** (page 244).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- Reverse brake assist does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

**Note:** *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning reverse brake assist to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

# Hill Start Assist

## WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

## HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

## HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

## HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Auto Hold

## HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Close the driver door and fasten your seatbelt before you switch the system on.



Press the button on the center console.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** Make sure you switch the system off before using an automatic car wash.

## USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 226).

**Note:** The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) and press the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

# Auto Hold

---

## AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

# Traction Control

## WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

## HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

**Note:** When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

## TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

# Traction Control

## TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

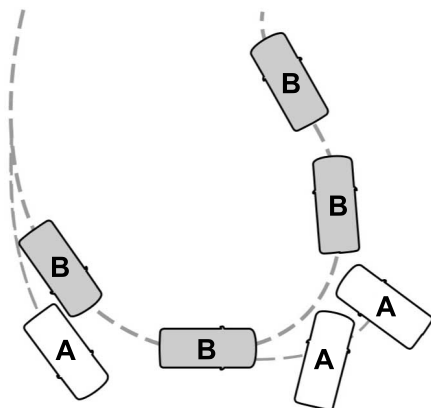
### AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
AdvanceTrac On	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The status of the AdvanceTrac sport mode after you switched it on.
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

# Stability Control

## WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

## HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the

electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

**Note:** *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

## STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Steering

## ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

### HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches to reduced steering assist or manual steering. Additionally, whenever disconnecting the battery or installing a new one, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

### ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

**Note:** *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

## STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STEERING – WARNING INDICATORS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

**Note:** *If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.*



# Steering

## STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Steering

---

## **STEERING—FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does it seem that the steering is wandering or pulling?**

- Check your vehicle for an improperly inflated or uneven tire, loose or worn suspension or steering components, or improper vehicle alignment.

### **The system is functioning properly and the components have been checked, why is the steering system continuing to pull or wander?**

- A high crown in the road or crosswinds could make the steering system feel like it is wandering or pulling.

# Parking Aids

## PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

**Note:** Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

## SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button and use the menu to turn the system on and off.

The system can also be turned off using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

# Parking Aids

## REAR PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

### REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 11 mph (18 km/h).

The sensor coverage area is up to 71 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

## LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

## REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

## FRONT PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

# Parking Aids

## FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The sensor coverage area is up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed, or when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

## LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

## FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

**Note:** *If the detected object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

## SIDE PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

### SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 24 in (60 cm) from the sides of your vehicle.

# Parking Aids

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. To reset the steering wheel angle information, drive straight for at least 492 ft (150 m) above 19 mph (30 km/h).

**Note:** If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, the system detects obstacles within 24 in (60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 24 in (60 cm) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, the system detects obstacles within 24 in (60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

## LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



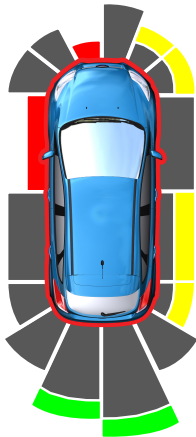
The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

## SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

# Parking Aids

## PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

## PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

Message	Details
Park Aid Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Aid	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Aid Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Front Park Aid	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Parking Aids

---

Message	Details
Check Rear Park Aid	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.



# Rear View Camera

## WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

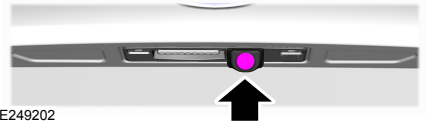
**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to the rear door ajar or damage to the rear of your vehicle.

## LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

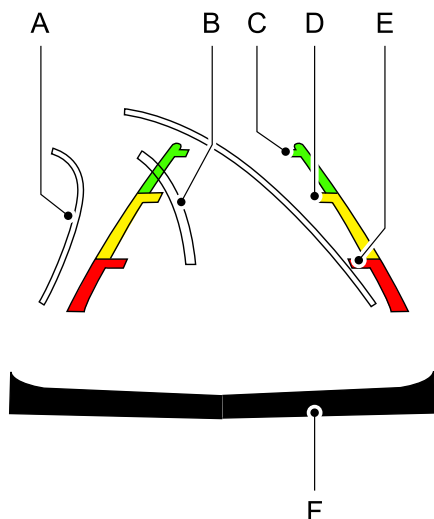


The rear view camera is on the liftgate.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

## Rear View Camera



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 31 mph (50 km/h).

### REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

#### ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

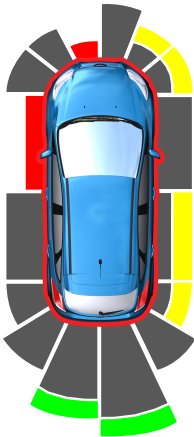
This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

## Rear View Camera

**Note:** Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

### SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

You can switch this feature on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

### SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Rear View Camera**.
4. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

# 360 Degree Camera

## HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

**Note:** Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

## LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

### Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the liftgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

### Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

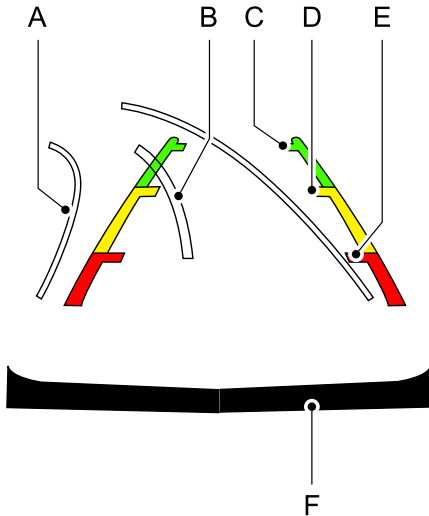
### Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

# 360 Degree Camera



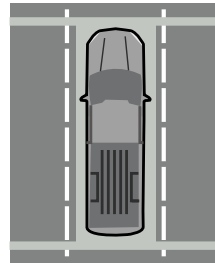
- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines faded in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

## SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

**Note:** The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front and 360 degree views display when the button is pressed.

## 360 Degree Camera

---

When in reverse (R), the rear and the 360 degree views display.

**Note:** *The 360 degree camera view turns off when the vehicle speed increases, except when in reverse (R).*

### SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the 360 degree image.

# Active Park Assist

## WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

## SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button, then press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.

## Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, shift out of neutral (N).


## Pausing Active Park Assist

To pause parking assistance at any time, release the parking aid button.


If you open the passenger or rear doors, active park assist pauses.

To resume parking, press and hold the parking aid button again.

## ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE

1.  Press the parking button.

**Note:** The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.

2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.

3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.


**Note:** If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.

4. Drive your vehicle approximately 3 ft (1 m) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.

5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).

## Active Park Assist


7.  Press and hold the parking button.
8. Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to park.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.


**Note:** When parallel parking between objects, the system parks closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to the luggage compartment.

**Note:** When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).

### ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE

1.  Press the parking button.

**Note:** Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.

2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.


3. Select perpendicular parking.
4. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

**Note:** If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.

5. Drive your vehicle approximately 3 ft (1 m) away from and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a parking space.

6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).

8.  Press and hold the parking button.

9. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

**Note:** Active park assist backs your vehicle into parking spaces.


**Note:** Active park assist aligns the front end of your vehicle with the lane side of the object next to it.


**Note:** When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.


**Note:** When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).

### EXITING A PARKING SPACE

1.  Press the parking button.

2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.

3. Select parallel park exit.
4. Use the turn signal to choose the direction to exit the parking space.
5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the parking brake.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).

8.  Press and hold the parking button.



# Active Park Assist

- Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to move.

**Note:** After active park assist drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

- Take control of your vehicle.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Active Park Fault	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

- The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

#### Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

- You have switched traction control off.
- The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

#### Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

- The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
- The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
- There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
- There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
- The parking space is more than 1.6 yd (1.5 m) or less than 0.5 yd (0.5 m) away from your vehicle.
- Your vehicle's speed is greater than 21.7 mph (35 km/h) for parallel parking or greater than 11.8 mph (19 km/h) for perpendicular parking.
- You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

#### Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

- An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
- Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.
- Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
- The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
- A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.

## Active Park Assist

---

- A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
- The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
- The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

# Cruise Control

## WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

### Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

## SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

### Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

## SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** The indicator changes color in the information display.

### Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**SET-**

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

# Cruise Control

---

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

**Note:** *The system remembers the set speed.*

**Note:** *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (16 km/h) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

## CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



**WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

## When Following a Vehicle



**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

### Sensor Limitations

**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

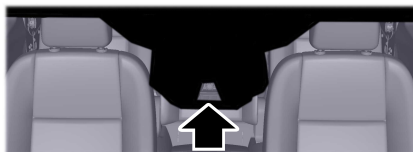
**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

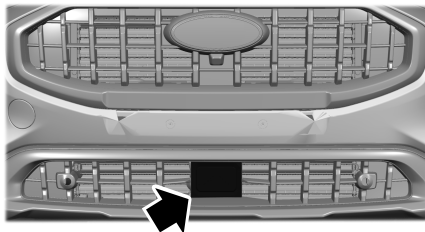
**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

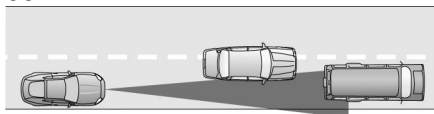
A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

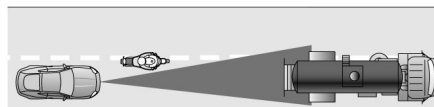
The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

## Detection Issues Can Occur:

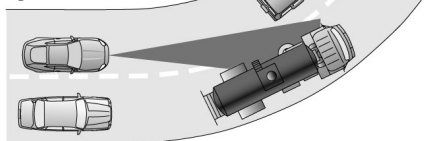
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 257).

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the required speed.

**SET+** Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 20 mph (30 km/h).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

## Changing the Set Speed

**SET+** Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

**SET-** Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



E249552

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

### Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

**RES**

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

**Note:** The system remembers the set speed.

**Note:** The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (16 km/h) under the set speed when driving uphill.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

## OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal**.

## LANE CENTERING

### HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

**Note:** *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

## LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 259).

## LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in your information and entertainment screen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 266).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.
- The steering sensor detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.

**Note:** *If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system will remain in standby until valid line markings are available.*

## LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 260).

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 265).

**Note:** *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

## SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

**Note:** *The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 265).*

## Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive Cruise Control**.
5. Switch Lane Centering on or off.

## LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react appropriately to the warnings the adaptive cruise control with lane centering system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 266).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.

**Note:** *The system could detect a light grip or light touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

## LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system slows the vehicle while maintaining steering assistance when lane markings are available. When no lane markings are available, the vehicle comes to a stop.

# Adaptive Cruise Control



If your vehicle starts to slow down after system cancellation, you must take full control of the vehicle. To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation, press and release the resume button.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

**Note:** *If your vehicle slows down due to your inactivity twice within a key cycle, the system disables. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.*

## LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

## LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

## LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

# Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane Centering Assist Not Available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume Control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

### HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 268).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 303).

### PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.

# Adaptive Cruise Control



**WARNING:** The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



**WARNING:** The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 259).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 273). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

**Note:** *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

## SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive Cruise Control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on or off.

## ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive Cruise Control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on.
6. Press **Tolerance**.
7. Adjust the slider to set the tolerance.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

**Note:** You can set tolerance for vehicle speed adjustment based on speed sign recognition only.

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

### Speed sign indicator



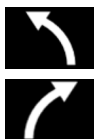
When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

### Road geometry indicator



When the system detects a curve or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

### Road geometry indicator symbols



Left curve.

Right curve.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

### Speed sign indicator



When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

### Road geometry indicator



When the system detects a curve or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

### Road geometry indicator symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

---

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

# Drive Mode Control

---

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL - 1.5L ECOBOOST™/ 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Drive mode control delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response in the selected mode. The drive mode control provides a single location to control performance settings for multiple systems.

Changing the drive mode changes the functionality of the following:

- Electric power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on the mode you select. See **Electric Power Steering Precautions** (page 238).
- Electronic stability control and traction control assist your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 237).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving inputs.
- Engine sounds change based on each mode.
- Transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules tuned to each mode.
- Four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.

The system tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

**Note:** *Not all settings may be available.*

**Note:** *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the mode defaults to Normal.*

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The system delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response. This provides a single location to control systems performance settings.

Changing the drive mode changes the functionality of the following systems:

- Electric power-assisted steering system adjusts steering effort and feel based on the mode you select. See **How Does Electric Power Steering Work** (page 238).
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 237).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving inputs.
- Transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules tuned to each mode.
- Four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.
- Electric vehicle mode selections may be limited. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics** (page 179).

The system tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

**Note:** *Not all settings may be available.*

# Drive Mode Control

**Note:** The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the mode defaults to Normal.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



Press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

As a secondary option:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.

## DRIVE MODES

### ECO



For efficient driving. This mode helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and helps to increase driving range.

### NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each ignition cycle.

### SLIPPERY



For less than ideal road conditions such as snow or ice covered roads. This mode lowers throttle response, adjusts transmission shift points, and optimizes vehicle stability controls to help mitigate wheel spin and maintain vehicle control when driving in winter conditions.

**Note:** Using slippery mode on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire wear.

### SPORT



For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases accelerator pedal response, enhances steering to provide a sportier feel, and adjusts transmission shift points for quicker vehicle acceleration.

## PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES

### AUTO EV



This mode provides an automatic use of high voltage battery power during the drive, staying in electric mode when possible and running the engine when needed.

### EV LATER



In EV Later, your vehicle runs on the engine as needed and saves most of the available electric range for later use in Auto EV or EV Now mode.

# Drive Mode Control

For example, your initial drive is at high speeds on open roads, but later your drive is at low speeds in an urban area where electric only driving is most efficient. In this case, you can select EV Later for the higher speed portion of your trip and then select Auto EV or EV Now for the urban portion.

When you enable EV Later, a white EV Later icon appears in the information display. EV Later resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Later again during your next drive.

When you select EV Later with the vehicle fully charged or near fully charged, some electric-only driving range is used to discharge the battery. This is to allow for full operation of the regenerative braking system.

## EV NOW



This mode provides an electric only driving experience.

Do not use EV Now when towing a trailer. The electric drive system is not designed for towing.

Your vehicle could accelerate slower and the top speed could be lower than when in Auto EV mode.

You can enable your engine at any time by using one of the following methods:

- Fully press the accelerator pedal. A pop-up message appears. Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enable the engine. When the engine is no longer needed, your vehicle returns to EV Now. The message disappears if you release the accelerator pedal.
- Select a different EV mode. This exits EV Now mode and permits engine operation. To return to EV Now mode, select it again.

Your vehicle could enter Engine Enabled mode if system conditions require it. A message displays if this occurs. This is a normal function of the system and your vehicle returns to EV Now mode when possible.

When you enable EV Now mode, a blue EV Now icon appears in the information display. If your vehicle is in Engine Enabled mode, the EV Now icon is amber. EV Now exits when your available electric range reaches zero.

**Note:** *In certain vehicles, cabin air heating is not available in EV Now mode, only heated seats and heated steering wheel.*

# Drive Mode Control

## PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Change EV mode for full defrost heat	Select either EV Later or EV Auto to enable full defrost. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine Enabled for System Performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to Enable Engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.

## WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

## HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

**Note:** *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

**Note:** *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

## HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

## VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Eco Coach**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display Setup**.
4. Select **Eco Coach**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as four percentage values. The percentage values increase as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The percentage values indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

How to improve your efficiency:

- Acceleration: Light to moderate acceleration improves your score.
- Braking: We recommend slow and steady braking.
- Speed: Maintain reasonable vehicle speeds for best scores.
- Gear shifting: Shifting the gears at the right moment improves your score.
- Compliance: Follow the recommendations to improve your score.

**Note:** *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a percentage value for gear shifting.*

## VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Select **Eco Coach**.

## VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Select **Eco Behavior**.



# Lane Keeping System

## WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

## HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror. When you switch the system on, a graphic of lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.



**Note:** The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button again.

**Note:** When switching the system on or off a message appears in the instrument cluster display to show the status.

**Note:** The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

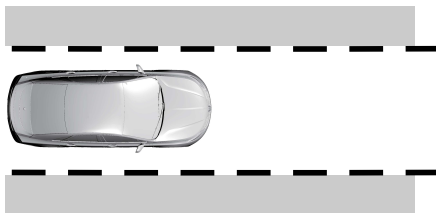
1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Mode**.
5. Select a setting.

## ALERT MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode provides steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

### HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel if it detects an unintended lane departure.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

# Lane Keeping System

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Lane-Keeping Intensity**.
5. Select a setting.

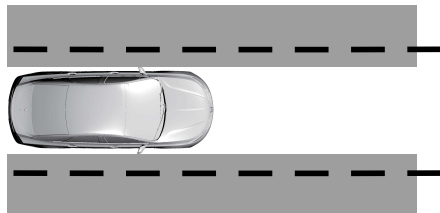
**Note:** This setting does not affect the aid mode.

## AID MODE

### WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

### HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

**Note:** When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

**Note:** The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

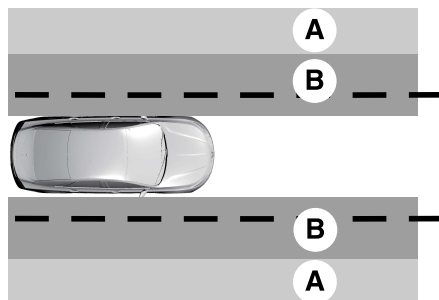
## ALERT AND AID MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode combines both, alert mode and aid mode.

### HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.



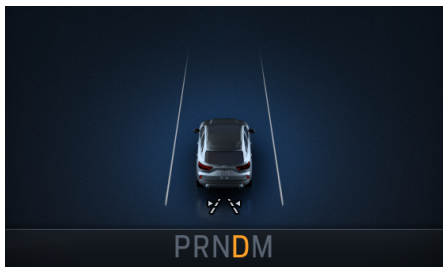
A Alert.

B Aid.

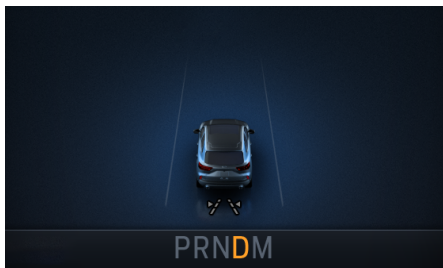
**Note:** The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

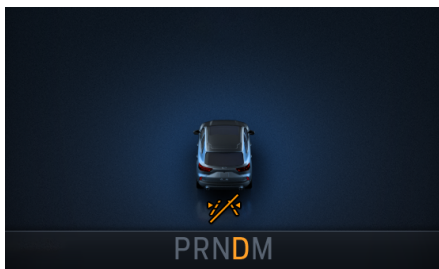


When you switch the system on and the system detects lane markings, a white indicator and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.



When the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h), and the system does not detect lane markings, a gray indicator and gray lane markings appear.

When the vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h), a gray indicator appears and lane markings do not appear.



When you switch the system off, an amber indicator with a strikethrough appears.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

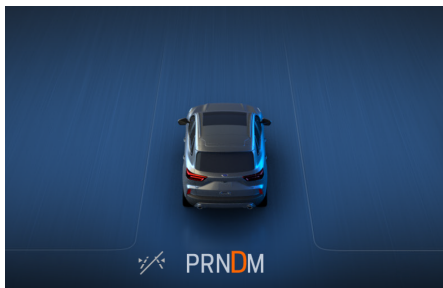


When you switch the system on and the system detects lane markings, a green indicator and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Lane Keeping System



When the vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h), or the system does not detect lane markings, a gray indicator and gray lane markings appear.



When you switch the system off, a gray indicator with a strikethrough and gray lane markings appear.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

**Note:** *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

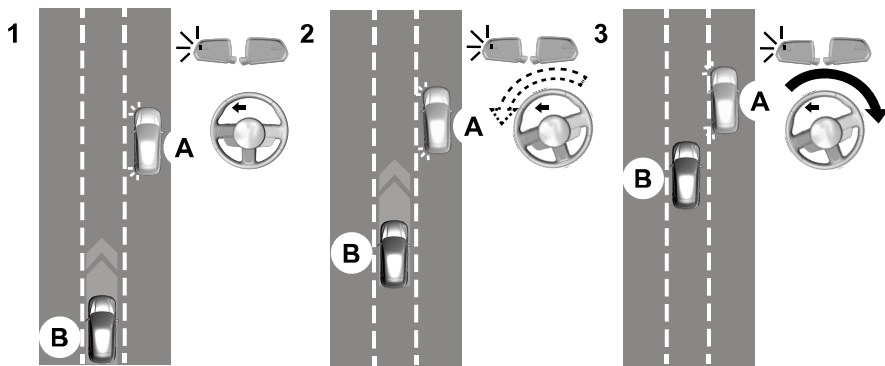
**Note:** *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

# Lane Keeping System

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



**Diagram 1:** Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

**Diagram 2:** The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

**Diagram 3:** Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 289).

# Lane Keeping System

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

**Note:** When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 290).

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 290).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

# Lane Keeping System

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 290).

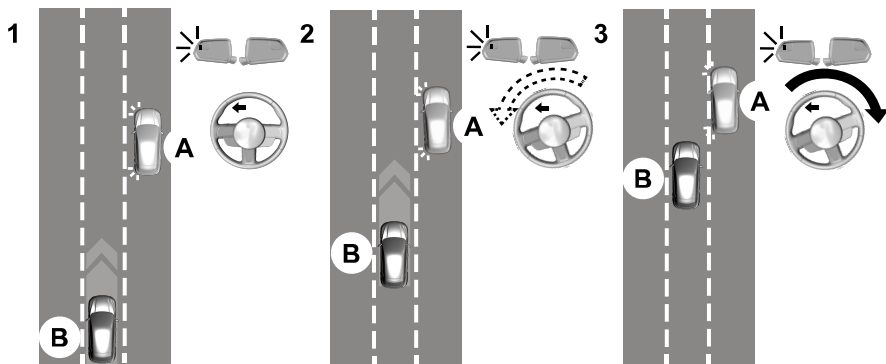
**Note:** *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

**Note:** *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS



**Diagram 1:** Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

**Diagram 2:** The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

**Diagram 3:** Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.



# Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 289).

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 7.9 ft (2.4 m), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 33 ft (10 m) to your vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage</b> (page 290).
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

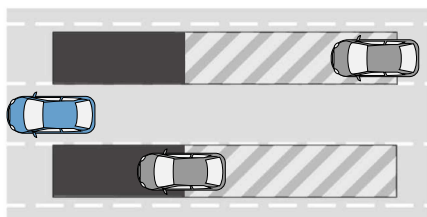
# Blind Spot Information System

## WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 59 ft (18 m) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 mph (48 km/h) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

**Note:** The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

**Note:** The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

# Blind Spot Information System

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Note:** The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

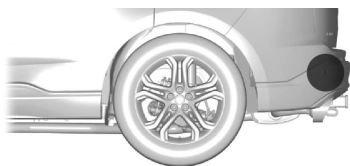
## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot Information System** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

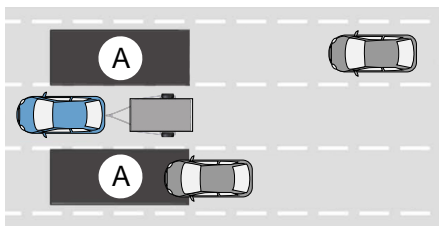
**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

# Blind Spot Information System

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 6 mph (10 km/h).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 20 ft (6 m) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.

- Box trailers that have a width greater than 7.9 ft (2.4 m) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 7.9 ft (2.4 m) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

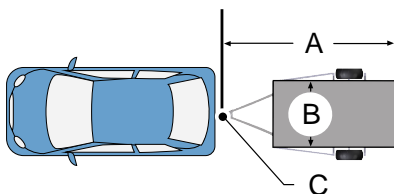
## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Blind Spot Information System**.
4. Switch **Trailer Blind Spot** on or off.

When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** *The system turns off and a message appears when a trailer is connected, but not set up or selected.*

## SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 7.9 ft (2.4 m), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 33 ft (10 m).

# Blind Spot Information System

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Add Trailer** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press **Trailer Blind Spot** and follow the instructions on the screen.

**Note:** Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.

**Note:** If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 3 ft (1 m). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.

## SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Select Active Trailer**.
4. Select an available trailer.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

**Note:** The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blindspot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot System Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.

# Blind Spot Information System

---

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Cross Traffic Alert

## WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

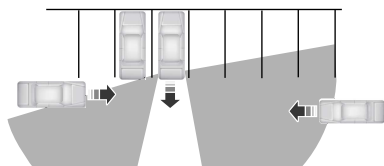
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *The system does not apply the brakes if you override it by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

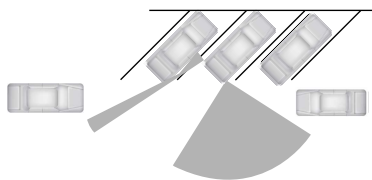
## HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 5 mph (8 km/h) and 37 mph (60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start your vehicle and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.



# Cross Traffic Alert

- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 5 mph (8 km/h) or greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

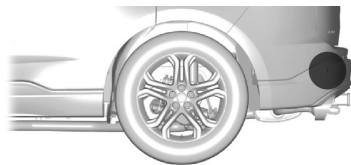
**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

## SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

**Note:** The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

## LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 3 ft (1 m).
- You set the trailer length to 3 ft (1 m) in the center display.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

# Cross Traffic Alert

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming

from.

**Note:** *If the arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays instead of arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross Traffic Alert Applying Brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 3 mph (5 km/h) and above. Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.


Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.


# Pre-Collision Assist


## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK


The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if your vehicle speed is less than 20 mph (30 km/h). Detection of crossing pedestrians at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 20 mph (30 km/h).


## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 **WARNING:** The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

 **WARNING:** In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

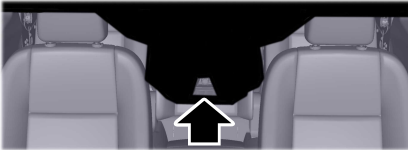
 **WARNING:** The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

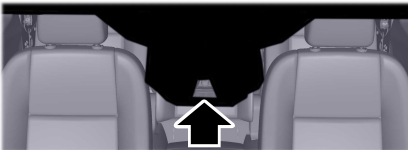
**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

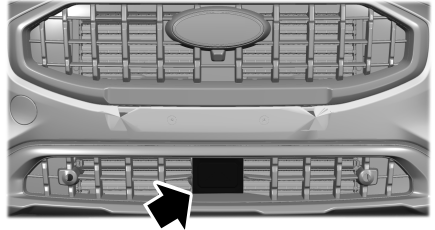
**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

## DISTANCE INDICATION

### WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

**Note:** The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.

4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

## DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
62 mph (100 km/h)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 82.0 ft (25 m)	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	55.8–82.0 ft (17–25 m).	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 55.8 ft (17 m).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

## FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

### WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

### ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting.

## AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Automatic Emergency Braking** on or off.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

### WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

**Note:** Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 298).

### EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

### SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering Assist** on or off.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

**Note:** No action is needed if the warning lamp illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 298).

# Pre-Collision Assist

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message could display.**

Cause	Details
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.



# Speed Sign Recognition

## WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit.

## HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

**Note:** Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

# Speed Sign Recognition

## SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING

- 1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
- 2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
- 3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
- 4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

- 1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
- 2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
- 3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
- 4. Press **Tolerance**.
- 5. Adjust the slider to set the tolerance.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic Sign Reduced Performance See Manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Driver Alert

## WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

## DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

**Note:** The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.

## RESETTING DRIVER ALERT

You can reset driver alert by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

# Driver Alert

## DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.

# Load Carrying

## LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may

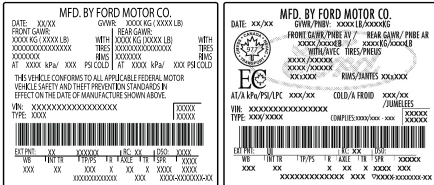
## Load Carrying

handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

## LOCATING THE SAFETY COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATION LABELS

### Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



The Safety Compliance Certification label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING

## GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT RATING

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 317).

## WHAT IS THE GROSS COMBINED WEIGHT RATING


Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR) is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking

## Load Carrying

damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 320).

### CALCULATING PAYLOAD

#### Tire and Loading Label Information Example:



**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL : 5	FRONT: 2	REAR: 3
------------------	-----------	----------	---------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **385 kg or 850 lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
SPARE	NONE	NONE


SEE OWNERS  
MANUAL FOR  
ADDITIONAL  
INFORMATION

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

### CALCULATING THE LOAD LIMIT

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.



**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**  
**RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT**

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL : 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIERE 3
--------------------------------------	-----------	------------------	-------------------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **396 kg or 875 lbs.**  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID
FRONT AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI
REAR ARRIERE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI

SEE OWNER'S  
MANUAL FOR  
ADDITIONAL  
INFORMATION  
VOIR LE MANUEL  
DE L'USAGER  
POUR PLUS DE  
RENSEIGNEMENTS

## Load Carrying

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

### Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately

30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times$



# Load Carrying

$220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 \text{ kilograms}$ .

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## ROOF RACK

### ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or use Sport or Track mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

**Note:** If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

**Note:** Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

### ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Do not install crossbars if your vehicle has a moonroof. Do not place any load on your vehicle if it has a moonroof. Using crossbars or loading the vehicle roof may void your vehicle's warranty.

Description	Maximum Recommended Load
Vehicles with a moonroof	0 lb (0 kg)
Vehicles without a moonroof	100 lb (45 kg)

## Load Carrying

---

**Note:** *The maximum roof load is based on the load being evenly distributed on the crossbars.*

**Note:** *When using a roof rack system, you must subtract the weight of the roof rack system from the maximum recommended load to determine your actual maximum cargo load. See the roof rack system manufacturer for more information.*

# Luggage Compartment

## INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER



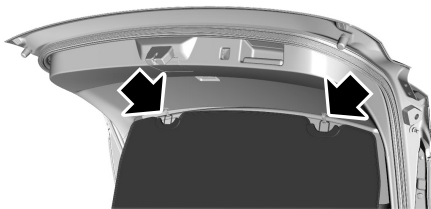
**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

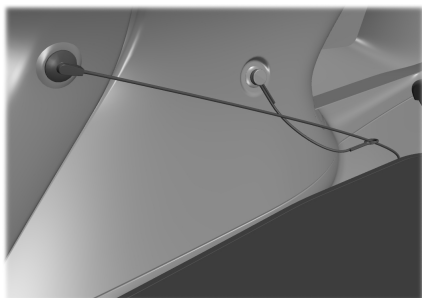
### Installing the Luggage Cover

1. Insert the luggage cover.



2. Insert the retaining clips into the liftgate trim panel.

**Note:** Make sure to support the luggage cover when inserting the retaining clips.

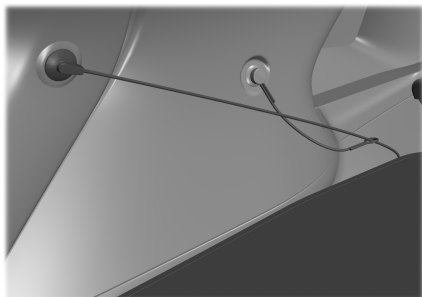


3. Attach the retaining cords to the luggage compartment trim panel.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle, the luggage cover may be fitted with only one cord.

### Removing the Luggage Cover

1. Open the liftgate.



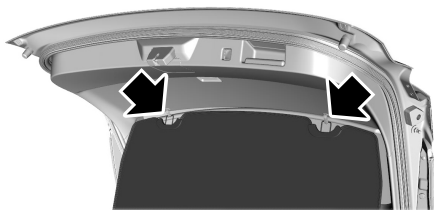
2. Detach the retaining cords on the luggage compartment trim panel.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle, the luggage cover may be fitted with only one cord.

**Note:** Support the luggage cover when detaching the retaining cords.

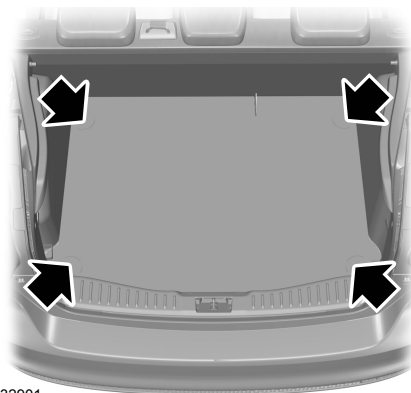
# Luggage Compartment

## LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



3. Detach the retaining clips on the liftgate trim panel.
4. Lift the luggage cover out of the liftgate.

The luggage cover can be stowed in the luggage compartment.



E132901

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

### LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

# Connecting a Trailer

## CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).

Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.

See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Account for the trailer coupler weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Do not exceed the load limits. See

**Calculating the Load Limit** (page 309).

## CONNECTING A TRAILER

### Trailer Towing Connector (If Equipped)



When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

**Note:** *Install the waterproof protection cap back onto the trailer towing connector whenever it is not in use. This helps to prevent water damage and trailer towing connector malfunction.*

**Note:** *You cannot use a seven-pin trailer wiring connector for your vehicle and the trailer lighting equipment.*

### Trailer Lamps



**WARNING:** Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

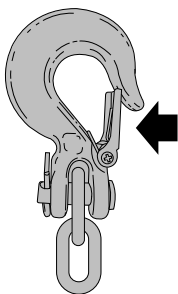
### Safety Chains

**Note:** *Do not attach safety chains to the bumper. Always connect the safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of your trailer hitch.*

Install trailer safety chains to the trailer hitch as recommended by the manufacturer. Cross the chains under the trailer coupler and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

## Connecting a Trailer

---



If the trailer safety chain hook has a latch, make sure the latch is fully closed.

# Towing a Trailer

## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



**WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 265).

## TRAILER BRAKE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.



**WARNING:** Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

# Towing a Trailer

---

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Certain states require functioning trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight.

Ford Motor Company recommends separate functioning brake systems for trailers weighing more than 1,500 lb (680 kg) when loaded.

## TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

The vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Limitations** (page 265).

**Note:** *Your vehicle could have reduced performance when operating at high altitudes and when heavily loaded or towing a trailer. When driving at elevation, to match driving performance as perceived at sea level, reduce gross vehicle weight and gross combination weight by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation.*

## LOADING YOUR TRAILER

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight. The trailer tongue weight should never exceed 10% of the maximum towing capacity.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

## TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Periodically inspect these components during and after any towing operation.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight.



# Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle may have a temporary or conventional spare tire. A temporary spare tire is different in diameter or width, tread-type, or is from a different manufacturer than the road tires on your vehicle. Consult information on the tire label or Safety Compliance label for limitations when using.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off when you are towing on long, steep slopes.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not continuously apply the brakes, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission has Grade Assist or Tow/Haul, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.

- Your vehicle has AdvanceTrac with roll stability control. When towing a trailer, additional loads could cause the AdvanceTrac system to engage during cornering maneuvers. Reduce cornering speeds to make sure that you can maintain control of the vehicle and trailer if the AdvanceTrac system engages.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and gradually brake.
- Avoid parking on a slope. However, if you must park on a slope, turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow, set the parking brake, place the transmission in park (P) and place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels.

**Note:** *Chocks are not included with your vehicle.*

## LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding 6 in (15 cm) could allow water to enter vehicle components, causing internal damage to the components and affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

**Note:** *Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water.*

# Towing a Trailer

**Note:** Disconnect the trailer wiring connector before backing the trailer into the water.

**Note:** Reconnect the trailer wiring connector after removing the trailer from the water.

## TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

### RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Market	Website
United States of America	<a href="https://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/">https://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/</a>
Canada	<a href="https://www.fleet.ford.ca/towing-guides/">https://www.fleet.ford.ca/towing-guides/</a>

# Towing a Trailer

---

## WHAT IS THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT

The maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow.

## CALCULATING THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT FOR YOUR VEHICLE

1. Start with the gross combined weight rating for your vehicle model and axle ratio.
2. Subtract all of the following that apply to your vehicle:
  - Vehicle curb weight.
  - Hitch hardware weight, for example a draw bar, ball, locks or weight distributing hardware.
  - Driver weight.
  - Passenger weight.
  - Payload, cargo and luggage weight.
  - Aftermarket equipment weight.

This equals the maximum loaded trailer weight for this combination.

**Note:** *The trailer tongue load is considered part of the payload for your vehicle. Reduce the total payload by the final trailer tongue weight.*

**Note:** *Consult an authorized dealer to determine the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle if you are not sure.*

# Trailer Sway Control

## HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer Sway Reduce Speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

2. Press **Towing**.
3. Switch **Trailer Sway Control** on or off.

The system turns on each time you start your vehicle.

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

**Note:** This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.

**Note:** This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.

**Note:** This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

**Note:** In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.

## SWITCHING TRAILER SWAY CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

# Driving Hints

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -13°F (-25°C).

## DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 222).

## PRECONDITIONING YOUR VEHICLE FOR COLD WEATHER DRIVING - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

- Fully charge your vehicle before heading out into cold weather. This helps maximize your driving range.
- Plug in your vehicle to maintain the best battery operating temperature before driving.

- When your vehicle is plugged in it uses energy from your charging source to heat the cabin and ensure maximum battery charge level.
- To maximize battery charge level, use heated seats and a lower climate control temperature setting.

**Note:** You can precondition your vehicle prior to your departure using the FordPass app.

**Note:** Pre-heating function may not be available in certain vehicles.

## BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 mi (480 km). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.

# Driving Hints

- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

## DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS

### DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

#### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

#### Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 325).

### DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

**Note:** *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

**Note:** *Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.*

### DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the information display. See **All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 221).

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

# Driving Hints

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

## FLOOR MATS



**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

## Driving Hints

---



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*



# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

## Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 16 ft (5 m) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

## Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

## Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 49 ft (15 m) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

**Note:** *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



**WARNING:** If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

## PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - 1.5L ECOBOOST™/2.0L ECOBOOST™

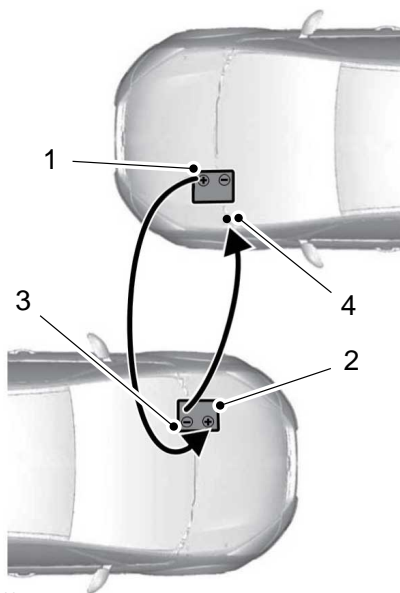
### Connecting the Jumper Cables



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

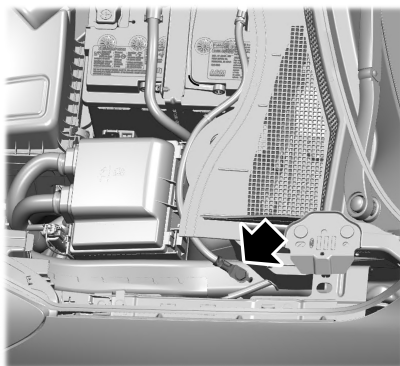
**Note:** *If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.*

# Crash and Breakdown Information



E142664

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



## Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

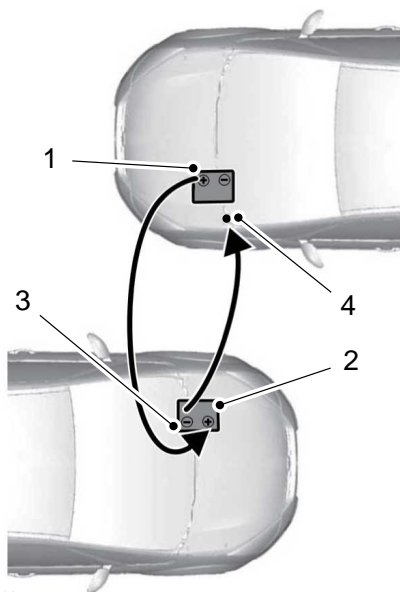
## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

### Connecting the Jumper Cables



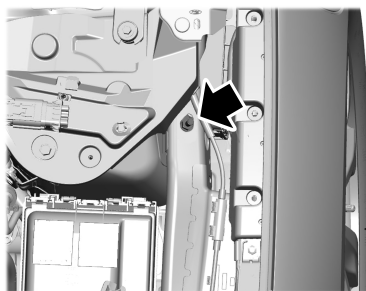
**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

**Note:** If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



E142664

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



### Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

### Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

### HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

### POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

### SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

**Note:** The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

## POST-COLLISION BRAKING

### How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

### Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

### Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

### Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

**Note:** Not every impact causes a shutoff.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

## RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## RECOVERY TOWING

### ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT

Your vehicle has frame-mounted front recovery hooks.

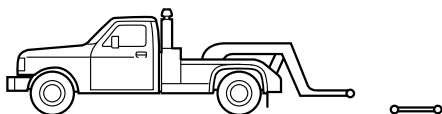
**Note:** *These hooks should never have a load applied to them greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.*

Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Never use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet draped over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.
- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the **sides** of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

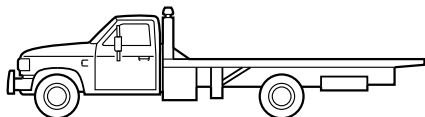
## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.

**Note:** You need to switch on the ignition to unlock the steering.

**Note:** Make sure you check the steering column before towing. It could lock if the battery is dead.

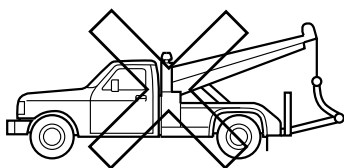


## FAIL-SAFE COOLING

### WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.



If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Vehicle damage could occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Front-wheel and rear-wheel drive vehicles must have their designated drive wheels off the ground regardless of towing direction. Use tow dollies to prevent damage to the transmission.

### HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

**Note:** Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

## FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.



# Towing Your Vehicle

---

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** *Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.*

**Note:** *If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.*

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - AWD, EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. You must recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - FWD, EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. Place the front wheels on a two-wheel tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

**Note:** *Release the parking brake before towing your vehicle. See **Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 225).*

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational towing. An example of recreational towing is towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines ensure that you do not damage the transmission.

**Note:** *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 129).*

You can tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground under the following conditions:

- You switch **Neutral Tow** on.
- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.

# Towing Your Vehicle

- You release the parking brake.
- You do not exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).

## Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Neutral Tow**.
5. Follow the instructions on the information display.
6. Fully press the brake pedal.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** Switching neutral tow on requires battery power.

**Note:** If the parking brake is applied, a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** If your vehicle has an ignition key, you cannot remove the key from the ignition when the transmission is in neutral (N) and your vehicle is off.

**Note:** Start the engine and allow it to run for a few minutes at the beginning of each day, and every six hours or fewer. With the engine running and your foot on the brake, shift into drive (D) and then into reverse (R) before shifting back into neutral (N). Before continuing to tow, switch neutral tow on.

## EMERGENCY TOWING - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Use the manual park release procedure. Failure to do so may result in damage to the transmission.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

## EMERGENCY TOWING - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch **Neutral Tow** on.
- You release the parking brake.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (55 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

## Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.

# Towing Your Vehicle

2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
5. Select **Neutral Tow**.
6. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.
7. Fully press the brake pedal.
8. Shift into neutral (N).
9. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the transmission.

**Note:** Switching neutral tow on requires battery power.

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 129).

## Switching Neutral Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Shift into park (P).

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

### TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Neutral Tow Engaged Turn Ignition Off for Towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow engaged Depress Brake and Select Park to Exit Neutral Tow	Displays when neutral tow is active and you want to exit neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Remove Park Brake for Towing	Reminder to remove park brake when in neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

# Customer Assistance

## GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired:  
1-800-232-5952)  
If your vehicle is configured as a  
motorhome please call 1-800-444-3311  
for support.

Additional information and resources are available online:

Website
<a href="http://www.owner.ford.com">www.owner.ford.com</a>

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State or Zip Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Extended Service Plans.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

#### Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

#### Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)  
7-1-1 (Customer Service for Deaf and  
Hard-of-Hearing Customers)

Website
<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>

### Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

## Customer Assistance

---

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 mi (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

## Customer Assistance

---

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

### **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator considers the testimony provided and makes a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information that follows, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that needs to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB reviews the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE a Division of BBB National Programs, Inc.  
1676 International Drive, Suite 550  
McLean, VA 22102**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information, refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

## Customer Assistance

---

### UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel or petrol/gas engines or the proper sulfur fuel for diesel engines.

If you cannot find the proper fuel recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of improper fuels in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using improper fuels may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands and/or Puerto Rico, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel and the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact the corresponding Ford Customer Assistance Center:

#### **FORD MOTOR COMPANY Customer Relationship Centers in:**

## Customer Assistance

Customer Relation- ship Center	Phone	Fax	E-mail
Asia Pacific	N/A	N/A	apemcrc@ford.com
Caribbean and Central America	+1-800-841-3673	N/A	atnclien@ford.com
Middle East	Ford 80004443673	971 4 3327 266	menacac@ford.com
	Lincoln 80004441067		
	UAE 80004441066		
	Saudi Arabia 8008443673		
	Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi 800850078		
	Kuwait 22280384		
North Africa	N/A	N/A	nafcrc@ford.com
Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands	+1-800-841-3673	N/A	atnclien@ford.com
Sub-Saharan Africa	N/A	N/A	ssacrc@ford.com
South Korea	+82-02-1600-6003	N/A	infokr1@ford.com or infokr@lincoln.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Global Trade Services by emailing, [expcso@ford.com](mailto:expcso@ford.com).

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

**Customers in the U.S. should call  
1-800-392-3673.**



## Customer Assistance

---

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, LLC at:

HELM, LLC  
47911 Halyard Drive, Suite 200  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST  
Helm, LLC can also be reached by their website:

[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com)

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

### Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, LLC using the contact information listed previously in this section.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

## Customer Assistance

---

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website (English)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/recalls">http://tc.canada.ca/recalls</a>
Website (French)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/rappels">http://tc.canada.ca/rappels</a>
Phone	1-800-333-0510

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>
Phone	1-800-565-3673

# Fuses

## FUSE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



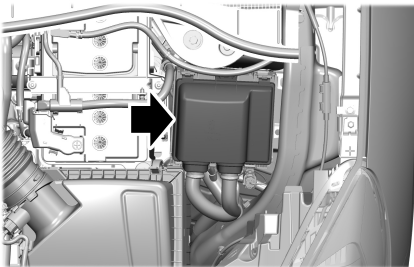
**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

## UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

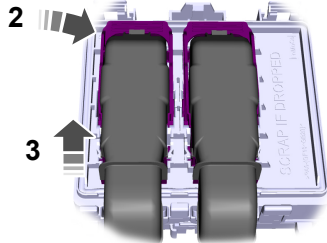
### LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



## ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



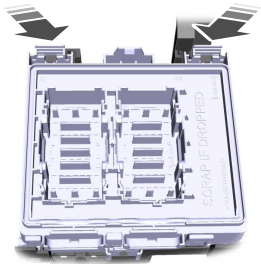
1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

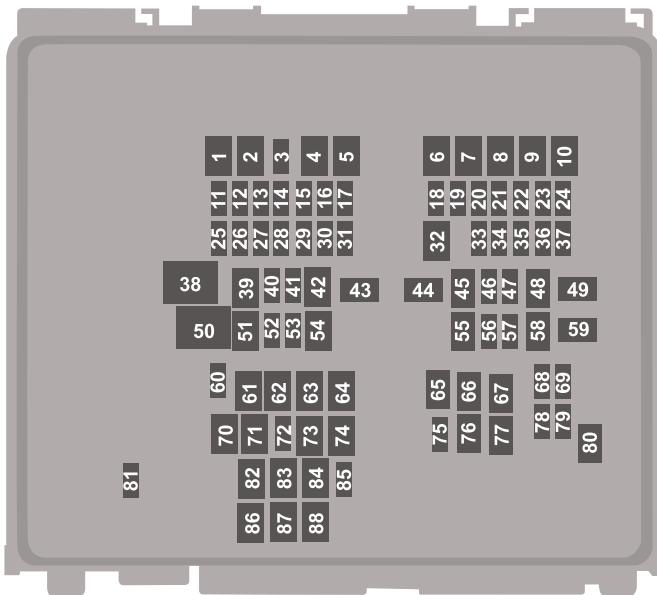
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

## Fuses



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	—	Not used.
3	—	Not used.
4	60 A	Supplemental heater (gas).
5	40 A	Supplemental heater (gas).
6	40 A	Supplemental heater (gas).
7	—	Not used.
8	—	Not used.
9	—	Not used.
10	30 A	Starter motor.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Powertrain control module.
13	15 A	Powertrain control module.
14	15 A	Powertrain control module.
15	—	Not used.
16	—	Not used.
17	—	Not used.
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
20	—	Not used.
21	5 A	Not used (spare).
22	5 A	Battery electronic control module (hybrid electric vehicle).
23	5 A	Charge port light ring (plug-in hybrid electric vehicle).
24	20 A	Amplifier.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
25	—	Not used.
26	—	Not used.
27	—	Not used.
28	10 A	Brake on-off switch.
29	5 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid electric vehicle).
30	10 A	Electronic stability control (gas). Transmission oil pump (hybrid electric vehicle).
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	20 A	Front parking aid camera. Rear view camera. Blind spot information system. Adaptive cruise control.
34	10 A	Not used (spare).
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	10 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid electric vehicle).
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	—	Not used.
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	50 A	Electric water pump (hybrid electric vehicle).
44	40 A	Trailer tow module.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
45	30 A	Passenger power seat.
46	20 A	Not used (spare).
47	20 A	Heated seats.
48	40 A	Anti-lock brake control valves.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake control pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	30 A	Moonroof.
52	5 A	DC/DC converter (hybrid electric vehicle).
53	10 A	Battery charge control module (hybrid electric vehicle).
54	—	Not used.
55	—	Not used.
56	—	Not used.
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	40 A	Auxiliary power distribution box (hybrid electric vehicle).
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	5 A	USB smart charger.
61	20 A	Rear cargo power point.
62	—	Not used.
63	30 A	Not used (spare).
64	30 A	Power liftgate.
65	—	Not used.
66	—	Not used.
67	—	Not used.

## Fuses

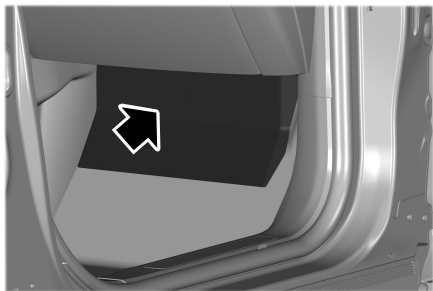
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
68	5 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor (gas).
69	15 A	Port fuel injectors.
70	20 A	Rear console power point.
71	20 A	Media bin power point.
72	20 A	Rear window wiper. Rear window washer pump.
73	—	Not used.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	10 A	Heated exterior mirrors.
76	30 A	Heated backlight.
77	—	Not used.
78	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
79	—	Not used.
80	20 A	Fuel pump.
81	—	Not used.
82	40 A	Power inverter.
83	—	Not used.
84	40 A	Driveline control module.
85	5 A	Rain sensor.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.



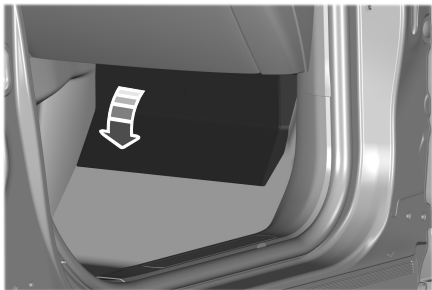
# Fuses

## BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

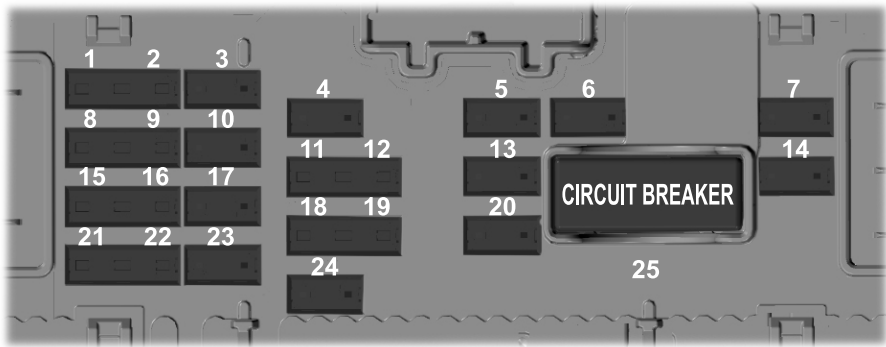
### LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



## ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



### IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Not used (spare).
2	5 A	Not used (spare).
3	10 A	Not used (spare).

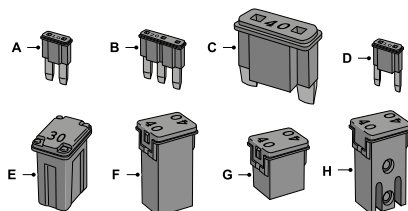
## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
4	10 A	Integrated control panel. Gateway module.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Moonroof.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	All-Wheel Drive module.
9	5 A	Electrochromatic mirror.
10	10 A	Extended power module.
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Telematics control unit module.
12	5 A	Keyless keypad switch.
13	15 A	Driver door unlock.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Extended power module.
16	15 A	Not used (spare).
17	15 A	SYNC. Radio transceiver module.
18	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging module.
19	7.5 A	Headlamp switch pack.
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module. Ignition switch.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Steering column control module.

# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Power windows. Exterior mirrors.

## IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

## When do I need to replace a fuse?

- If a fuse has blown.

## How do I identify a blown fuse?

- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

## FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

# Maintenance

## MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

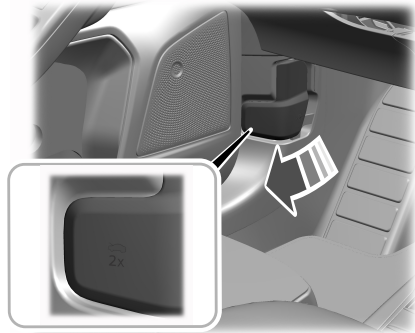
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 412).

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

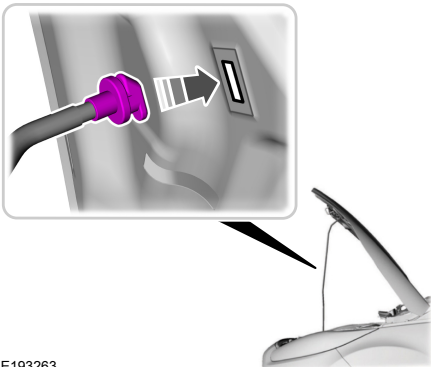
**Note:** *This action releases the hood latch.*

**Note:** *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

**Note:** *There is no secondary hood release under the hood.*


# Maintenance



E193263


5. Support the hood with the strut.

## Closing the Hood

**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 10–14 in (25–35 cm).

## Warning Lamps and Indicators



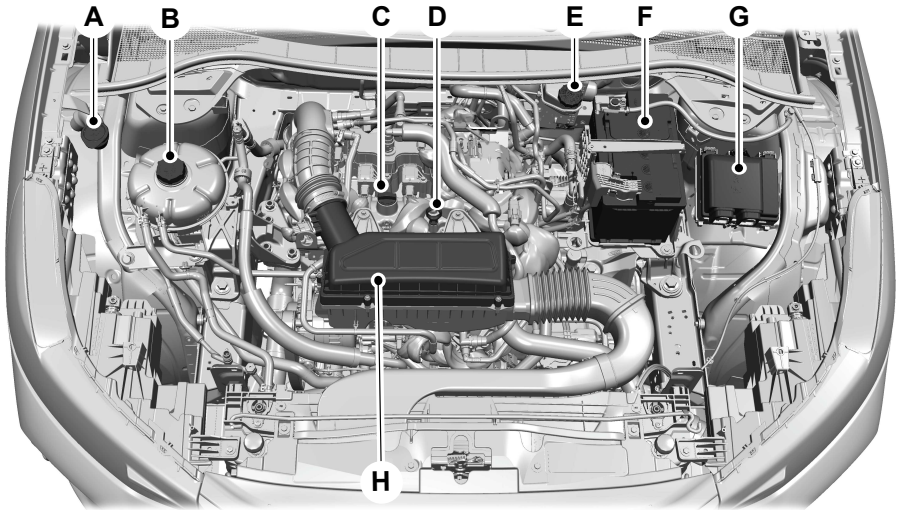
This lamp illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Information Messages

Message	Action
Hood Ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

# Maintenance

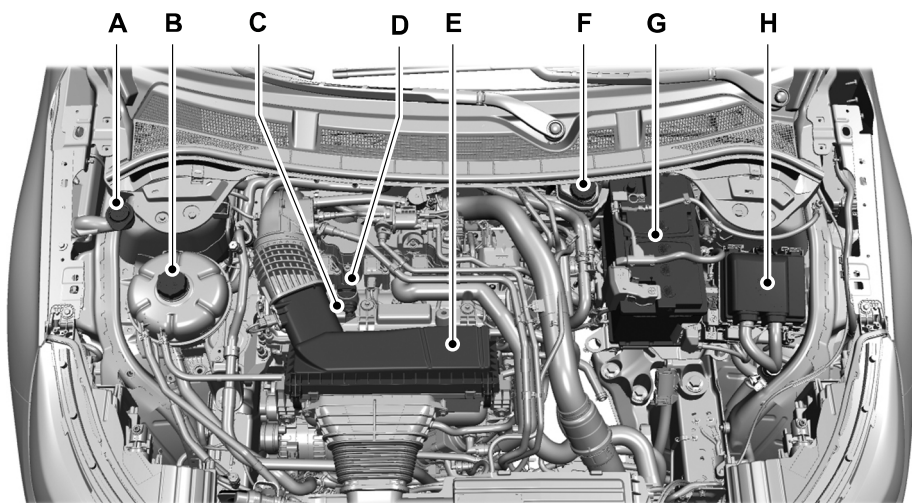
## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



- A Windshield washer fluid. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 88).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 364).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 359).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 359).
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 223).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 368).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 345).
- H Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 360).

# Maintenance

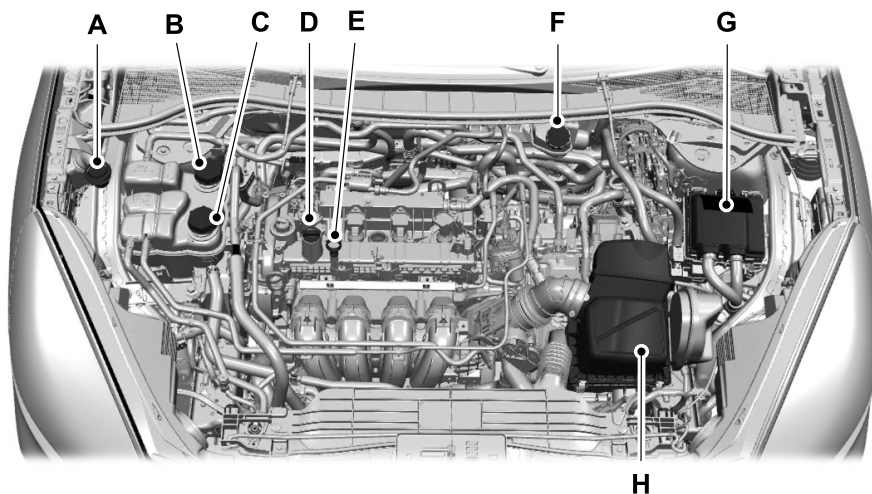
## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 88).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 364).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 359).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 359).
- E Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 361).
- F Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 223).
- G Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 368).
- H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 345).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



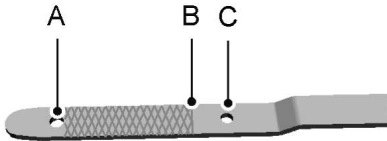
- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir: See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 88).
- B Low temperature coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 364).
- C High temperature coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 364).
- D Engine oil filler cap: See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 359).
- E Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 359).
- F Brake fluid reservoir: See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 223).
- G Power distribution box: See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 346).
- H Air filter assembly: See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 363).



# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL

### ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW



E225040

- A Minimum.
- B Fill Level.
- C Maximum.

### CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

**Note:** Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

**Note:** Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.

**Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

**Note:** Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.

**Note:** If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### ADDING ENGINE OIL



**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 412).

# Maintenance

4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

## RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Oil Life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Oil Life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## ENGINE AIR FILTER

### CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



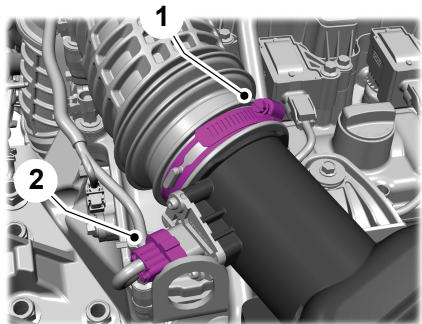
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 415).

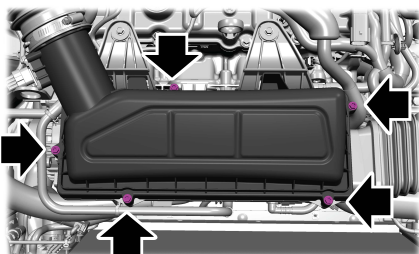
**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element could result in severe engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

**Note:** When servicing the air filter, do not allow foreign material to enter the air induction system. The engine is susceptible to damage from even small particles.



1. Use a screwdriver to loosen the clamp.
2. Disconnect the connector.

## Maintenance



3. Use a screwdriver to unfasten the five screws.

**Note:** The screws remain in the air filter housing cover.

4. Remove air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing.

**Note:** Make sure no dirt gets in the engine and you have a good seal.

7. Install a new air filter element.

**Note:** Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.

8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

### CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

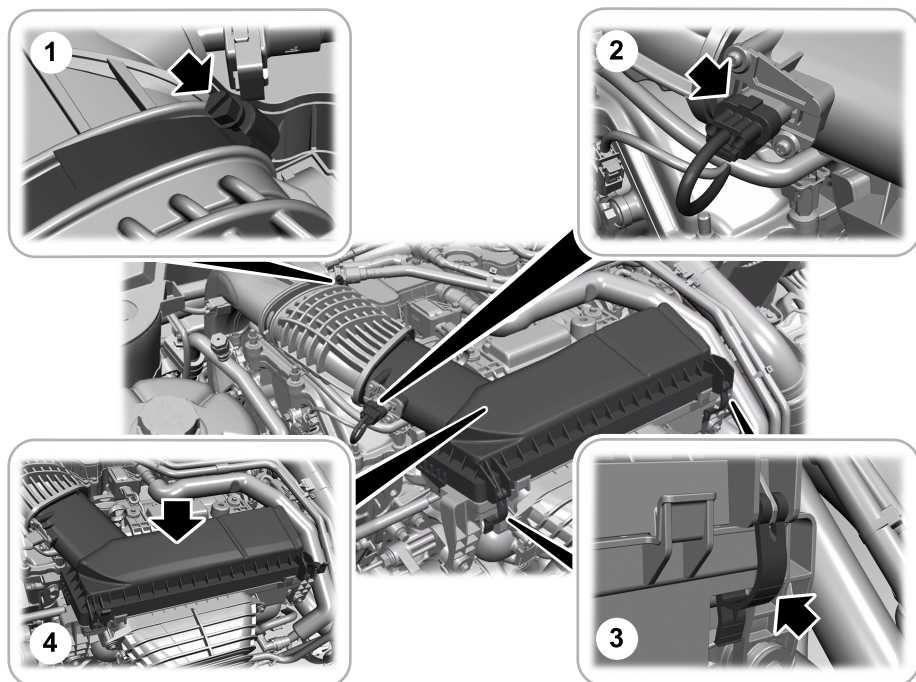
Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 415).

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element could result in severe engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

**Note:** When servicing the air filter, do not allow foreign material to enter the air induction system. The engine is susceptible to damage from even small particles.

# Maintenance



1. Loosen the clamp.
2. Disconnect the connector.
3. Release the two clips securing the airbox cover to the housing.
4. Lift up on the airbox cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the housing.

**Note:** Do not allow dirt or debris to enter the air filter housing and make sure you have a good seal.

7. Install the new air filter element.

**Note:** Be careful not to crimp the air filter element edges between the housing and cover. This can cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.

8. Install the airbox cover back into the housing. Make sure that all four cover fingers are seated in their corresponding housing windows. Press down with your right hand on the flexible tube, while pulling back on the housing bracket with your left hand.
9. Reverse Steps 3, 2 and 1. Make sure the clamp joint is fully seated.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

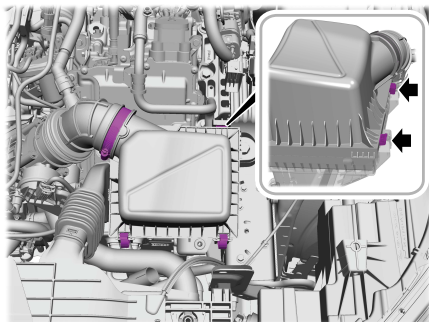


**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only parts that meet or exceed our specifications.

Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 465).

**Note:** If you do not use the correct air filter element, your vehicle warranty could be void.

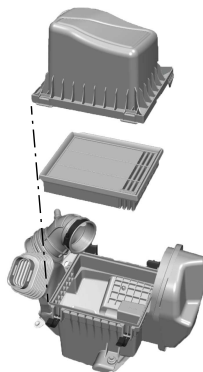


1. Using a screwdriver, loosen the clamp on air filter housing cover.
2. Gently pull the boot back away from the air filter housing cover.
3. Release the two clips on the front from the air filter housing cover.

4. Remove air filter housing cover.

**Note:** Take care to avoid damage when releasing the rear pins from the air filter housing.

5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



7. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.

**Note:** Take care to avoid damage when inserting the rear pins into the air filter housing.

9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.
10. Reconnect the boot to the air filter housing cover and tighten securely.

# Maintenance

## COOLANT

### CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29°F (-34°C) and -35°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## ADDING COOLANT



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

# Maintenance

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 412). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 412). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

**Note:** *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 412).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

# Maintenance

## MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



**WARNING:** If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 333).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.



# Maintenance

## COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Checking the Coolant Level</b> (page 364).

## 12V BATTERY

### 12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

# Maintenance



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

## WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

## HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

## BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

**Note:** *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

## Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - 1.5L ECOBOOST™/2.0L ECOBOOST™

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 354).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

# Maintenance

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.

5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 98).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Replacing the Battery

**Note:** *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The battery is in the luggage compartment.

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

# Maintenance

---

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Remove the battery securing clamp.
5. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
6. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Resetting Window Bounce-Back** (page 99).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Replacing the Battery

**Note:** *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

## RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

**Note:** *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

# Maintenance

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

## 12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### 12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

## 12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check Charging System	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

# Maintenance

Message	Details
Battery State of Charge Low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See <b>Jump Starting the Vehicle</b> (page 328). See <b>Jump Starting the Vehicle</b> (page 330). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn Power Off To Save Battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical Power Saver Active Some Features Turned Off See Manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

# Maintenance

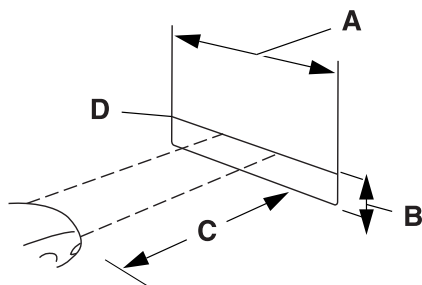
## 12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Message	Action
12V Battery Fault Service Soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric Range Reduced due to Park/Hazard Lamps On While Vehicle Off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.
Electrical System Drain Service Required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.



A 8 feet (2.4 meters)

B Center height of lamp to ground

C 25 feet (7.6 meters)

D Horizontal reference line

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp when adjusting the other.

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

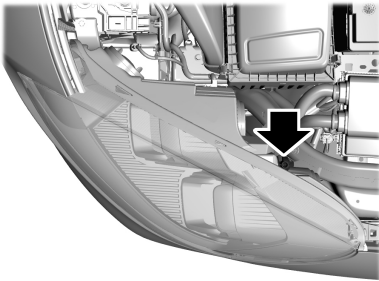
# Maintenance

## MAINTENANCE VIDEOS

[2.0L Engine Air Filter Replacement Video Link](#)



4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp does need to be adjusted.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

### Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.



# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover, ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner, ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash, ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser, ZC-20 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P3-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo, CXC-66-A (Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner, ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner, CXC-101 (Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant, ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid, CXC-37-F/M (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner, ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner, CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover, ZC-14 (U.S.)	-
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner, ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	-

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

### CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

### CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** We recommend cleaning the power sliding rear window at regular intervals to avoid dust and debris accumulation to deliver appropriate function.

### CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Rinse the area well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

### CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.

# Vehicle Care

**Note:** Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

## CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

**Note:** If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

**Note:** If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

## CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 12 in (30 cm) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 1,000 psi (6,895 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 73°F (23°C).

**Note:** Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.

## CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

## CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

# Vehicle Care

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

## CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

**Note:** *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

## CLEANING FABRIC



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## CLEANING LEATHER



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.

# Vehicle Care

5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING VINYL



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## CLEANING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING MOONROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

**Note:** *The moonroof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.*

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

# Vehicle Care

---

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage could lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

### General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

### Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which could cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

### Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### Hybrid Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally we recommend disconnecting the 12V battery which reduces system loads on the HV battery.

### 12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

**Note:** *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

### Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

**Note:** *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

## REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.



# Wheel and Tire Information

## LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label or safety certification label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures. See **Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels** (page 308).

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES



Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires us to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Wheel and Tire Information

### Traction AA A B C



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### Temperature A B C



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory

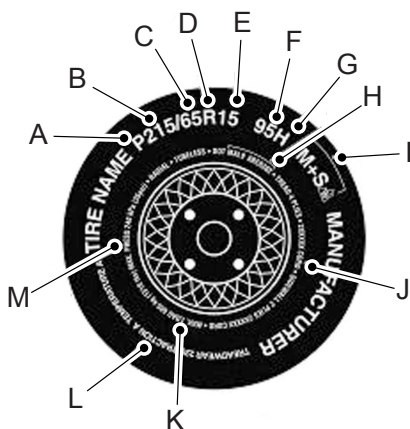
test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

## Wheel and Tire Information

### Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

**A. P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

**B. 215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**D. R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**F. 95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

**G. H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

## Wheel and Tire Information

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are

the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

**J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

## Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

### M. Maximum Inflation

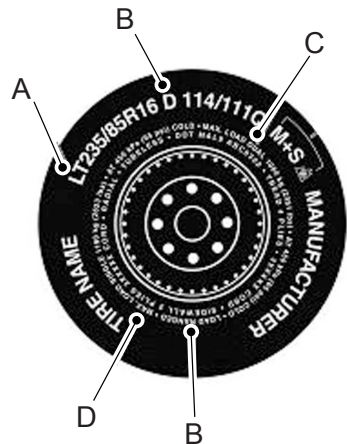
**Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge

that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

### Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

## Wheel and Tire Information

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

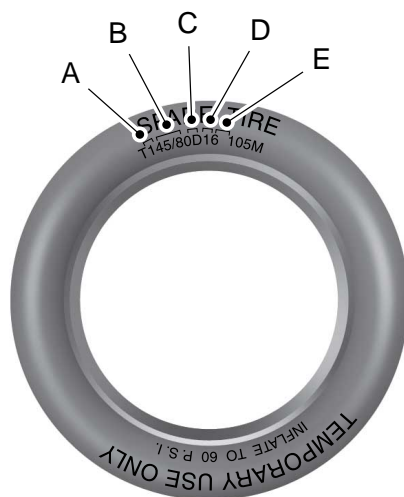
C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

### Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

## Wheel and Tire Information

---

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

### GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

\***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

\***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

\***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

\***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

\***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

\***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

\***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

\* **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

\***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

\* **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

## Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**\*Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



**WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



**WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.



**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



## Wheel and Tire Information



**WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

### Age



**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at

# Wheel and Tire Information

least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

The tires on your vehicle could have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. In some climates you need to use snow tires and chains on your vehicle in emergency situations or if required by law.

**Note:** *The suspension insulation and bumpers help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

**Note:** *Driving too fast for road conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.*

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front tires only.
- Chains may damage aluminum wheels.
- Use ultra low profile cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/65R17 and 225/60R18 all season tires.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 225/55R19.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction include a tensioning device.
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- When driving with snow chains do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring or brake lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

# Tire Care

## CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 394).

## INFLATING THE TIRES



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

# Tire Care

## Checking Pressure when tires are hot:

If pressures are checked after tires have been driven for more than three minutes or more than 1 mile, (2 km) the tires become hot and the pressures will increase by approximately 4 psi (27.6 kPa). Therefore when the tire pressure is adjusted under these conditions, it should be increased to a gauge reading of 4 psi (27.6 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure.

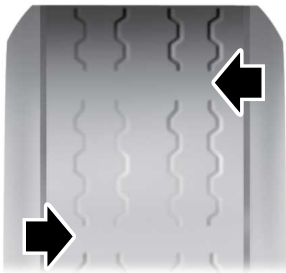
After inflating the tires while hot, make sure to recheck tire pressure later once the tires are cold.

## For Example Only

Gauge reading of hot tire	33 psi (230 kPa)
If recommended, cold inflation pressure is	32 psi (220 kPa)
The hot tire pressure is only 1 psi (10 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure. Therefore, add 3 psi (20 kPa) more to increase the hot pressure to 4 psi (30 kPa) over the recommended cold inflation pressure.	

New hot pressure	36 psi (250 kPa)
------------------	------------------

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR WEAR



When the tread is worn down to 2/32 inch (1.6 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 2/32 inch (1.6 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

# Tire Care

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves.

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

## Safety Practices



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## HIGH SPEED DRIVING CAN BE DANGEROUS

Correct inflation pressure is especially important. However, at high speeds, even with the correct inflation pressure, a road hazard for example is more difficult to avoid and if contact is made, has a greater chance of causing tire damage than at a lower speed. Moreover, driving at high speed reduces the reaction time available to avoid accidents and bring your vehicle to a safe stop.

If you see any damage to a tire or wheel, replace it with the spare at once and visit a participating Tire Retailer.

Exceeding the maximum speeds shown on the following page for each type of tire will cause the tire to build up excessive heat which can cause tire damage that could result in sudden tire destruction and rapid air loss. Failure to control a vehicle when one or more tires experience a sudden air loss can lead to an accident.

**In any case, you should not exceed reasonable speeds as indicated by the legal limits and driving conditions.**

## Tire Care

---

### **DO NOT OVERLOAD: DRIVING ON ANY OVERLOADED TIRE IS DANGEROUS**

The maximum load rating of your tires is molded on the tire sidewall. Do not exceed this rating. Follow the loading instructions of the manufacturer of your vehicle and this will ensure that your tires are not overloaded. Tires which are loaded beyond their maximum allowable loads for the particular application will build up excessive heat that may result in sudden tire destruction. Do not exceed the gross axle weight rating for any axle on your vehicle.

### **TIRE ALTERATIONS**

Do not make or allow to be made any alterations on your tires. Alterations may prevent proper performance, leading to tire damage which can result in an accident. Tires which become unserviceable due to alterations such as truing, whitewall inlays, addition of balancing or sealant liquids, or the use of tire dressing containing petroleum distillates are excluded from warranty coverage.

### **REPAIRS - WHEREVER POSSIBLE, SEE YOUR TIRE RETAILER AT ONCE**

If any tire sustains a puncture, have the tire demounted and thoroughly inspected by a tire retailer for possible damage that may have occurred. A tread area puncture in any passenger or light truck tire can be repaired provided that the puncture hole is not more than 1/4" in diameter, not more than one radial cable per casing ply is damaged, and the tire has not been damaged further by the puncturing object or by running underinflated. Tire punctures consistent with these guidelines should only be repaired by following the US Tire Manufacturers Association (USTMA) recommended repair procedures. Plug-only repairs done on-the-wheel are considered improper and therefore, not recommended. Such repairs are not reliable and may cause further damage to the tire.

### **STORAGE**

Tires contain waxes and emollients to protect their outer surfaces from ozone and weather checking. As the tire rolls and flexes, the waxes and emollients continually migrate to the surface, replenishing this protection throughout the normal use of the tire. Consequently, when tires sit unused for long periods of time (a month or more) their surfaces

## Tire Care

---

become dry and more susceptible to ozone and weather checking and the casing becomes susceptible to flat spotting. **For this reason, tires should always be stored in a cool, dry, clean, indoor environment. If storage is for one month or more, eliminate the weight from the tires by raising the vehicle or by removing the tires from the vehicle. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in damage to your tires or premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.**

When tires are stored, be sure they are placed away from sources of heat and ozone such as direct sunlight, hot pipes and electric generators. Be sure that surfaces on which tires are stored are clean and free from grease, gasoline or other substances, which could deteriorate the rubber. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in damage to your tires or premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.

### **FOLLOW THESE MOUNTING RECOMMENDATIONS**

**Tire changing can be dangerous and must be done by professionally trained persons using proper tools and procedures as specified by the US Tire Manufacturers Association (USTMA). Single or dual assemblies must be completely deflated before demounting.**

Your tires should be mounted on wheels of correct size and type and which are in good, clean condition. Wheels that are bent, chipped, rusted (steel wheels) or corroded (alloy wheels) may cause tire damage. The inside of the tire must be free from foreign material. Have your retailer check the wheels before mounting new tires. Mismatched tires and rims can explode during mounting. Also, mismatched tires and rims can result in dangerous tire failure on the road. If a tire is mounted by error on the wrong-sized rim, do not remount it on the proper rim – scrap it. It may have been damaged internally (which is not externally visible) by having been dangerously stretched and could fail on the highway.



# Tire Care

---

**Old valves may leak. When new tubeless tires are mounted, have new valves of the correct type installed. Tubeless tires must only be mounted on wheels designed for tubeless tires i.e., wheels which have safety humps or ledges.**

It is recommended that you have your tires and wheels balanced. Tires and wheels, which are not balanced, may cause steering difficulties, a bumpy ride, and irregular tire wear.

**Be sure that all your valves have suitable valve caps. The valve cap is the primary seal against air loss.**

## TEMPORARY SPARE TIRES

When using any temporary spare tire, be sure to follow the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

**REMEMBER... TO AVOID DAMAGE TO YOUR TIRES AND POSSIBLE ACCIDENT:**

- CHECK TIRE PRESSURE AT LEAST ONCE EACH MONTH WHEN TIRES ARE COLD AND BEFORE LONG TRIPS.
- DO NOT UNDERINFLATE/OVERINFLATE.
- DO NOT OVERLOAD.
- DRIVE AT MODERATE SPEEDS, OBSERVE LEGAL LIMITS.

- AVOID DRIVING OVER POTHOLES, OBSTACLES, CURBS OR EDGES OF PAVEMENT.
- AVOID EXCESSIVE WHEEL SPINNING.
- IF YOU SEE ANY DAMAGE TO A TIRE, REPLACE WITH THE SPARE AND VISIT ANY AUTHORIZED RETAILER AT ONCE.
- IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS, CONTACT YOUR AUTHORIZED RETAILER.

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

# Tire Care

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

## INSPECTING THE WHEEL VALVE STEMS

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

## TIRE ROTATION



**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always

perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

**Note:** *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

**Note:** *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

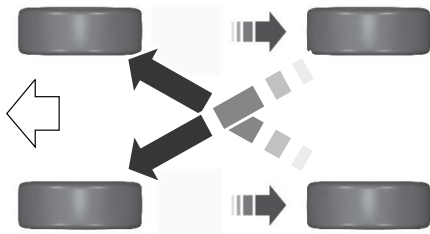
**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

## Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.

## Tire Care

---



# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seat) or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

**Note:** *If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.*

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

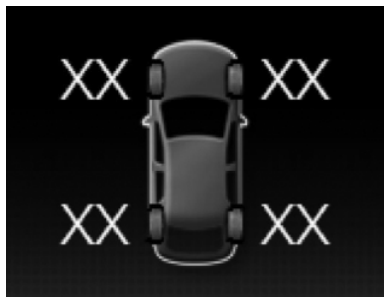
The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

**Note:** *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

**Note:** *After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the warning indicator to turn off.*

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Changing a Road Wheel

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).



**WARNING:** Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



**WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as the your vehicle road wheels, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner. We recommend that you have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheels, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

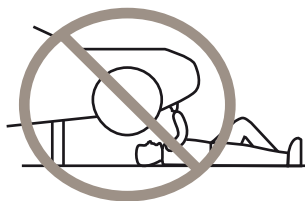
**Note:** *Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.*

**Note:** *The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.*

**Note:** *If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.*

On Plug-in and Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles you can find the jack and wrench to the left of the spare tire.

On Non Plug-in or Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, you can find the jack and wrench under the spare tire.



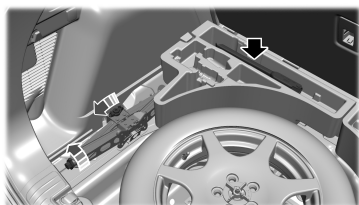
**WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



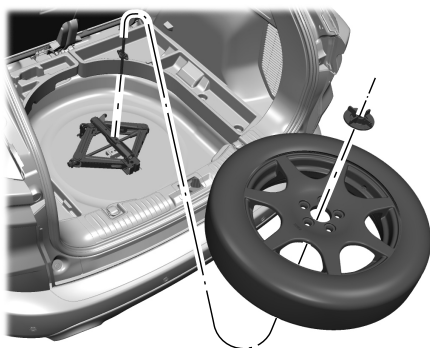
# Changing a Road Wheel

**Note:** The jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle with normal usage.

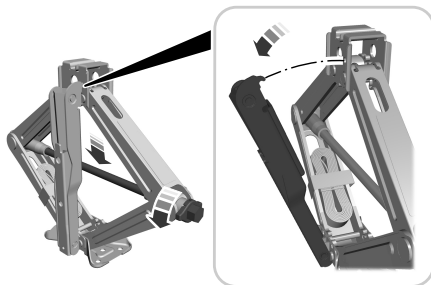
1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.
3. Lift and remove the carpeted cargo area floor to access the spare tire, jack and wheel nut wrench.
4. Remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Remove the spare tire and jack kit from the spare tire compartment.



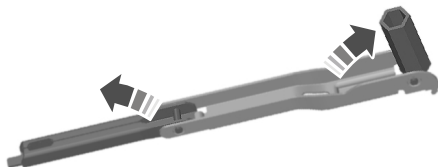
6. Remove the jack and the flat tire retainer strap from the jack base.



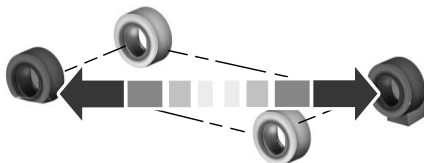
7. Turn the jack hex nut drive screw counterclockwise to detach the wheel nut wrench from the jack. This lowers the jack and releases the mechanical lock.



8. Unfold the wheel nut wrench for use.

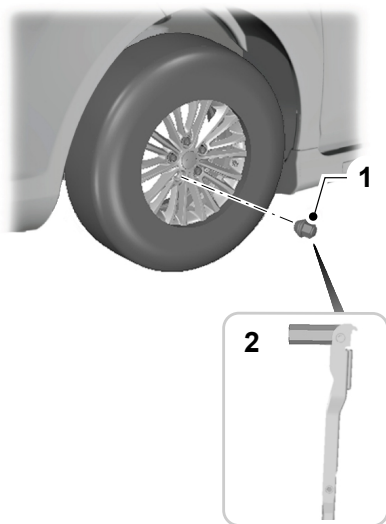


9. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.



10. Loosen each wheel nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

# Changing a Road Wheel

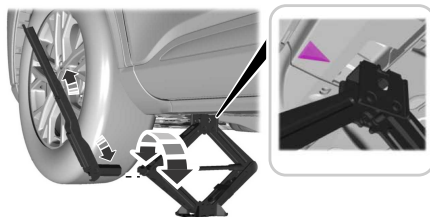


**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

11. The vehicle jacking points shown here are also depicted on the warning label on the jack. Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.



12. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is completely off the ground.



13. Remove the wheel nuts with the wheel nut wrench.

**Note:** For vehicles with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.



**WARNING:** Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

# Changing a Road Wheel

14. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the wheel nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the wheel nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
15. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
16. Remove the jack and fully tighten the wheel nuts in the order shown.



**WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



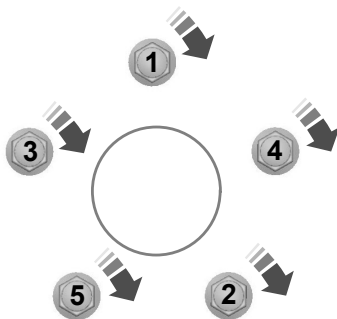
**WARNING:** Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.



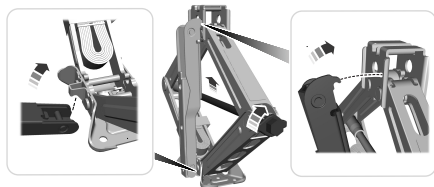
## Stowing the flat tire

1. To store the jack kit on Non Plug-in or Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, fold the jack and wrench handle and engage it to the bracket of the jack base using the wheel nut wrench pin.

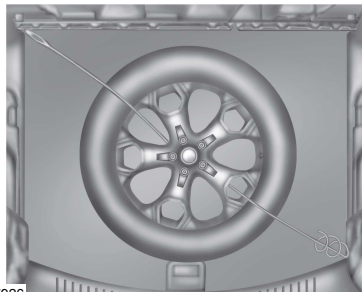
**Note:** To store the jack and wrench on Plug-in and Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, fold the jack and wrench into the closed position, and place the wrench into the storage compartment. Position the jack assembly into the closed position and make sure the jack is fastened securely before you drive.

2. When attaching the folded wrench on the jack, swing the wrench upward and adjust the jack height until the wrench hook engages the hole on the jack. Tighten the hex nut clockwise until secure.

# Changing a Road Wheel



6. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.



E157926

7. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
8. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 6. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
9. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.



1

2

3



# Changing a Road Wheel

## WHEEL NUTS



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt size	lb.ft (Nm)
M12 x 1.5	100 lb.ft (135 Nm)

\*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque within 100 mi (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).



A     Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	11:1
Displacement.	91.35 in <sup>3</sup> (1,497 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Firing order.	1-2-3
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.026–0.030 in (0.65–0.75 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	10.8:1
Displacement.	121.7 in <sup>3</sup> (1,995 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.026–0.030 in (0.65–0.75 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	13.0:1
Displacement.	152 in <sup>3</sup> (2,490 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.049–0.053 in (1.25–1.35 mm)



## Capacities and Specifications

### MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-2065
Battery.	BAGM-48H6-760
Cabin air filter.	FP-100-A
Engine oil filter. <sup>1</sup>	FL-910-S
Spark plug.	SP-597-X
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2502-A (driver side) WW-2051-A (passenger side) WW-1112-A (rear window)

<sup>1</sup> If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that aligns to SAE/USCAR – 36 Performance Specifications. Filter Type B.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.fordparts.com](http://www.fordparts.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

### MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-2064
Battery.	BAGM-48H6-760
Cabin air filter.	FP-100-A
Engine oil filter. <sup>1</sup>	FL-2127
Spark plug.	SP-597-X
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2502-A (driver side) WW-2051-A (passenger side)

# Capacities and Specifications

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
	WW-1112-A (rear window)

<sup>1</sup> If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that aligns to SAE/USCAR – 36 Performance Specifications. Filter Type B.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.fordparts.com](http://www.fordparts.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1948
12V Battery.	BXT-99RT4-A
Cabin air filter.	FP-100-A
Engine oil filter. <sup>1</sup>	FL-910-S
Spark plug.	SP-530-X
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2502-A (driver side) WW-2051-A (passenger side) WW-1112-A (rear window)

<sup>1</sup> If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that aligns to SAE/USCAR – 36 Performance Specifications. Filter Type B.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.fordparts.com](http://www.fordparts.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

# Capacities and Specifications

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

## Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	1.25 gal (4.73 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil / Huile moteur SAE 0W-20 Motorcraft®(Canada) XO-0W20-QFS(U.S.) CXO-0W20-LFS6(Canada)	WSS-M2C962-A1

## Capacities and Specifications

### ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	1.53 gal (5.8 L)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Motor Oil (U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Motor Oil / Huile moteur SAE 5W-30 Motorcraft® (Canada) XO-5W30-Q1SP, XO-5W30-Q1FS (U.S.) CXO-5W30-LSP6, CXO-5W30-LFS6 (Canada)	WSS-M2C961-A1

# Capacities and Specifications

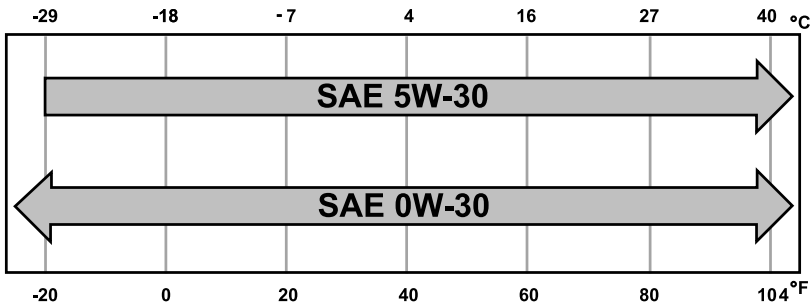
## Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance,

we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0°F (-30°C) or below.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C963-A1



**Note:** If you use your vehicle regularly above the altitude of 5,000 ft (1,524 m) and below the temperature of -4.0°F (-20°C), it is recommended to use the alternative engine oil.

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

## Capacities and Specifications



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	1.43 gal (5.4 L)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil (U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil / Huile moteur SAE 0W-20 Motorcraft® (Canada) XO-0W20-QFS (U.S.) CXO-0W20-LFS6 (Canada)	WSS-M2C962-A1

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.98 gal (7.5 L)

## Capacities and Specifications

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/ Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigél/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. It may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

**Note:** The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	2.25 gal (8.5 L)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/ Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigél/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. It may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

# Capacities and Specifications

**Note:** The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	1.24 gal (4.7 L)
High temperature cooling circuit.	2.40 gal (9.1 L)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigél/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. It may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

**Note:** The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.



## Capacities and Specifications

### COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L DURATEC, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	1.64 gal (6.2 L)
High temperature cooling circuit.	2.54 gal (9.6 L)

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/ Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigél/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. It may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

**Note:** The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.

### FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.5L ECOBOOST™/2.0L ECOBOOST™

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
1.5L all-wheel drive.	15.7 gal (59.5 L)
1.5L front-wheel drive.	14.8 gal (56.2 L)
2.0L all-wheel drive.	15.7 gal (59.5 L)
2.0L front-wheel drive.	15.7 gal (59.5 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	14.3 gal (54.2 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 2.5L DURATEC, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	11.1 gal (42 L)

## Capacities and Specifications

### AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

#### Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	18.7 oz (0.53 kg)	2.7 fl oz (80 cm <sup>3</sup> )

#### Materials

Name	Specification
R-1234yf Refrigerant(U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf(Canada) YN-33-A(U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA(Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® POE Electric A/C Compressor Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® POE Electric A/C Compressor Oil / Huile d'ester à base de polyol pour compresseur de climatiseur électrique Motorcraft®(Canada) YN-50(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C31-B2

### AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications.

If you do not use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	19.4 oz (0.55 kg)	3.4 fl oz (100 ml)

## Materials

Name	Specification
R-1234yf Refrigerant(U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf(Canada) YN-33-A(U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA(Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil / Huile PAG pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft®(Canada) YN-35(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C300-A2

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L DURATEC, FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV), PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
FHEV (with battery chiller)	19.4 oz (0.55 kg)	4.7 fl oz (140 cm³)
FHEV (without battery chiller)	18.3 oz (0.52 kg)	4.7 fl oz (140 cm³)
PHEV	19.4 oz (0.55 kg)	4.7 fl oz (140 cm³)

## Materials

Name	Specification
R-1234yf Refrigerant(U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf(Canada) YN-33-A(U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA(Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® POE Electric A/C Compressor Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® POE Electric A/C Compressor Oil / Huile d'ester à base de polyol pour compresseur de climatiseur électrique Motorcraft®(Canada) YN-50(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C31-B2

# WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid -35 °C / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité - 35 °C Motorcraft®(Canada) ZC-32-B2(U.S.) CXC-37-M(Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A

## Capacities and Specifications

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Eight-speed automatic transmission (8F35).	11.6 qt (11 L) <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid / MERCON® ULV huile pour boîtes automatique Motorcraft® (Canada) XT-12-QULV (U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C949-A,

**Note:** Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	5.0 qt (4.7 L) <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid(U.S.) Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid / MERCON® ULV huile pour boîtes automatique Motorcraft®(Canada) XT-12-QULV(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C949-A,

**Note:** Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid(U.S.) Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft®(Canada) PM-20(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M6C65-A2

**Note:** We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.



# Capacities and Specifications

## REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	0.8 qt (0.75 L)

**Note:** Ford rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless you submerge the axle in water.

### Materials

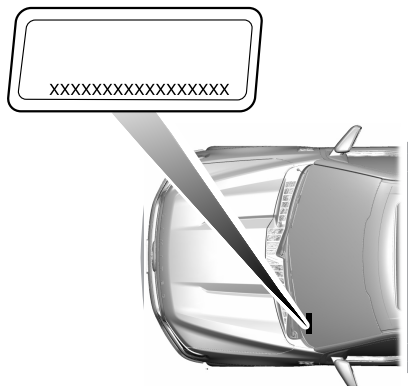
Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Disconnect Rear Drive Unit Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® Disconnect Rear Drive Unit Fluid / Déconnecter le liquide du pont arrière Motor- craft® (Canada) XY-75W-QL (U.S. & Canada)	-

# Vehicle Identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

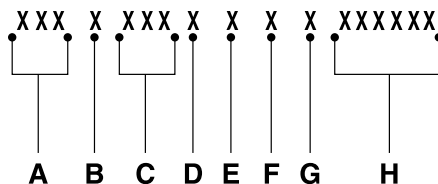
The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



**Note:** In the illustration, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER OVERVIEW

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:



- A World manufacturer identifier.
- B Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
- D Engine or motor type.
- E Check digit.
- F Model year.
- G Assembly plant.
- H Production sequence number.

# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

## ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

## CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Manage Wi-Fi Networks**.
4. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
5. Press **View Available Networks**.
6. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

# Connected Vehicle

## CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

**Note:** Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

#### Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

#### Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

#### What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

### **Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?**

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

### **Why do software downloads take too long?**

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

### **Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?**

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot (If Equipped)

### CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

**Note:** The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Hotspot Visibility**.

**Note:** The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

### Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.

**Note:** The network name is the hotspot name.

4. Press **Show Password**.

### Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

### Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

**Note:** If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

**Note:** If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

**Note:** If you carry out a vehicle system reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

### CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Network Name**.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press **Done**.
8. Press **Change Password**.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press **Done**.

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot (If Equipped)

---

### Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

**Note:** *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Select a frequency.

### VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?**

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

## SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

## PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

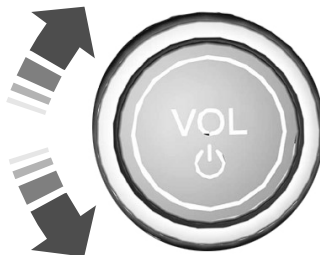


Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

**Note:** Not all sources can be paused. The button mutes these sources.

**Note:** The mute button on the steering wheel pauses the media source.

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

## SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

**Note:** Not all sources have shuffle mode.

## SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.



# Audio System

**Note:** Not all sources have repeat mode.

## SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

**Note:** A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

## MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

**Note:** The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.


## SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

## SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

## ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

-  Press the settings icon on the touchscreen.
- Press **Sound Settings**.
- Select the desired menu point and adjust the settings.

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- Press **Clock Settings**.
- Set the time.

**Note:** The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

## Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- Press **Clock Settings**.
- Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

## FM RADIO

### FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

## SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION

### Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

**Note:** You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.

# Audio System

## Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.



Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

## SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## DIGITAL RADIO

### WHAT IS DIGITAL RADIO

HD Radio™ technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio.

For additional information, visit [www.HDRadio.com](http://www.HDRadio.com).

HD Radio Technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of XPERI. The vehicle manufacturer and XPERI are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

## HOW DOES DIGITAL RADIO WORK

Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts in addition to analog broadcasts.

HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in both analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations are only available digitally and could contain new or different content.

**Note:** When the system first receives an HD1 station, it plays the station in the analog version until it verifies the station is an HD Radio station. Then it shifts to the digital version.

**Note:** There is an audio mute delay when switching to an HD2 or HD3 station because the system has to reacquire and decode the digital signal.

## DIGITAL RADIO LIMITATIONS

If you are outside the reception area, the system could not work.

If you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station could mute due to weak signal strength.

**Note:** If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. If you are listening to any other multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.

# Audio System

Depending on the station quality, you could hear a slight sound change when the station changes between analog and digital audio.

You cannot access a saved HD station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.

## SWITCHING DIGITAL RADIO RECEPTION ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Radio**.
4. Switch **HD Radio** on or off.

## DIGITAL RADIO INDICATORS

### HD Radio Indicator

The indicator appears when HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology.



The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is acquiring a digital station.

Orange indicates digital audio is playing.

## Multicast Indicator

The multicast indicator appears if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers indicate additional digital channels available.

**Note:** For stations that have more than one HD multicast, the HD indicator and radio text appears as a button. Press the button to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency.

## SATELLITE RADIO

### WHAT IS SATELLITE RADIO

Your factory-installed SiriusXM radio system includes a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For additional information about extended subscription terms, visit [www.SiriusXM.com](http://www.SiriusXM.com) in the United States, [www.SiriusXM.ca](http://www.SiriusXM.ca) in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Neither SiriusXM and its affiliates nor Ford Motor Company and its affiliates will be liable to you or any third party for any such modification, suspension or termination.

# Audio System

---

## **SATELLITE RADIO LIMITATIONS**

For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. Placing luggage over the antenna may reduce performance. Factory-installed and aftermarket vehicle structures including, but not limited to, roof racks and soft top roofs in a partially open position could reduce reception performance.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and could result in the audio system muting. Your display could show an error message to indicate the interference.

## **LOCATING THE SATELLITE RADIO IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**

1. Select SiriusXM as the audio source.
2. Tune to channel 0.

# Center Display Overview

## CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

### Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 5 mph (8 km/h).

## STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

**Note:** Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.

### Audio System



Audio system muted.

## Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

## Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



active.

Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not



active.

**Note:** If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

# Center Display Overview

## Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

## Vehicle Software Update

See **Software Update Indicators** (page 461).

## Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

## FEATURE BAR - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH CENTER DISPLAY SCREEN

The feature bar is located on the bottom of the display and allows you to access vehicle features.



Press to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a **Bluetooth®** device.



Press to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone.



Press to use the navigation system.



Press to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device.



Press to adjust system settings.



Press to view features.

**Note:** The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.

## HOME SCREEN - VEHICLES WITH: 13.2 INCH CENTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Features, such as navigation, audio and phone, are located in the main portion of the display. The icons located on the side of the display allow you to access other vehicle features and settings.



Press to adjust system settings.



Press to view features.

**Note:** The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.



Press to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

# Center Display Overview

---

## INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN - VEHICLES WITH: 13.2 INCH CENTER DISPLAY SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

You can swipe up or down to view a different card.

**Note:** *On some screens, you can swipe a card toward the center of the screen to move the content into the main screen.*

## REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

# Voice Interaction

## WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

## SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on.
4. Press **Preferred Wake Word**.
5. Press a setting.

## BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

## VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

### General Examples

Command	Result
Start Over.	The system resets the current voice interaction.
Cancel.	The system ends the current voice interaction.
Next Page.	The system goes to the next page.
Previous Page.	The system goes to the previous page.
Help.	The system displays a list of available commands you can use on the current screen.

### Entertainment Examples

Command	Result
Play The Beatles.	The system plays the selected music.
Show music by The Beatles.	The system shows the selected music.
Tune to FM 101.9.	The system tunes the radio to 101.9 FM.
Set the station to Sirius Channel 2.	The system tunes the radio to Sirius Channel 2.



# Voice Interaction

## Climate Examples

Command	Result
Set the temperature to low.	The system sets the temperature to the minimum.
Set the temperature to 72°F (22°C).	The system sets the temperature to 72°F (22°C).

## Phone Examples

Command	Result
Call Henry.	The system calls Henry using your connected device.
Dial (phone number).	The system dials the selected phone number.
Send a text message to Henry.	The system begins a dictated text message.
Read my message from Henry.	The system reads you the most recent message from Henry.

## Apps Examples

Command	Result
Mobile Apps.	The system prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on the system.
List Mobile Apps.	The system will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	The system will search and connect to compatible apps running on your mobile device.

## Navigation Examples

Command	Result
Say the address that you're looking for, like '125 Main Street, New York'.	The system begins guided navigation to the address.
Where is ____	The system searches for the requested point of interest.
Show me directions to Oakwood Boulevard and Pelham Road.	The system shows directions to the selected intersection.
Cancel route.	The system ends guided navigation to the destination.

# Alexa Built-In

## WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

## ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

## SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.
6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

## Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

## USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

**Note:** If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

## ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

### Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

**Note:** If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

### Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.

## Alexa Built-In

---

4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

**Note:** *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

### Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.

# Phone

## PHONE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add Phone** on the touchscreen.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

### Recent Call List

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

### Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

### Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

**Note:** Up to 12 devices can be stored.

### Do Not Disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

### Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

# Phone

---

## Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

**Note:** *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

# Phone

## MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

### Making Calls

**To call a number in your contacts, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your recent calls, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your favorites, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favorites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

### Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

**To accept the call, select:**

Menu Item
Accept

**Note:** You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

**To reject the call, select:**

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

### During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

# Phone

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

## SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

## SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

### IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.



## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add Phone** on the touchscreen.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

3. Select your vehicle on your device.

**Note:** A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.

2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.

3. Press **Sources**.

4. Press **Bluetooth**.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

## APP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

## ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

**Note:** Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

**Note:** The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

## ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.
3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

**Note:** Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

**Note:** The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Access the system applications.
6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **MOBILE APPS** are enabled.

## SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

### Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

# Apps

---

**Note:** Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

## Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

## Disabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

## Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Apple CarPlay**.

## SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

### Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

### Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

## Disabling Android Auto

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

## Re-Enabling Android Auto

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Android Auto**.

# Navigation

---

## CONNECTED NAVIGATION

Your vehicle may be equipped with connected navigation. Depending on your version, you are given a 90 day or 3 year trial. After the trial period, you need to sign up to continue the experience. For additional information, visit [ford.com/connectedservices](https://ford.com/connectedservices).

**Note:** *If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.*

## ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access Navigation by pressing the map on the left side of the homescreen.

**Note:** *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

## NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

**Note:** *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to [www.here.com/mapcreator](https://www.here.com/mapcreator).*

## ADJUSTING THE MAP

### ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

## CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

**Note:** *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

## LIVE TRAFFIC

### WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

### SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch **Connected Navigation** on or off.

**Note:** *Switching off this feature disables all features of the **Connected Navigation**.*

## SETTING A DESTINATION

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press Search.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Press the Go! button to begin navigation.

# Navigation

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen.
2. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location.

**Note:** Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.

3. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the pin.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

**Note:** Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press and hold on a point of interest icon on the map.

**Note:** Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.

2. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

## WAYPOINTS

### ADDING A WAYPOINT



Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

### EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

## ROUTE GUIDANCE

### ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

### REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

### CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

# Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See

## **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 433).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 461).

## **Vehicle Software Update Requirements**

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

## **Vehicle Software Update Limitations**

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
  - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
  - Charging resumes once the update completes.

## **SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS**

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## **Switching Automatic Updates On and Off**

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

# Vehicle Software Updates

**Note:** Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.

## Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

### Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Schedule Updates**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press **Save**.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

**Note:** The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.

### Installing Software Updates

#### Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

#### Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

### Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.

## SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

# Vehicle System Reset

---

## PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.
4. Press **Factory Reset**.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.



# Ford Protect

---

## WHAT IS FORD PROTECT

Protect yourself from the rising cost of vehicle repairs with a Ford Protect extended service plan.

### Ford Protect Extended Service Plans - United States Only

Ford Protect extended service plans mean peace of mind. Extended service plans are backed by Ford Motor Company, and provide more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Ford Dealer, insist on the Ford Protect extended service plan.

### Ford Protect Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One trip to the service center could easily exceed the price of your Ford Protect extended service plan. With the Ford Protect extended service plan, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four mechanical Ford Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it is probably easier to list what is not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

### Rental Car Reimbursement

#### *First Day Rental Benefit*

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we will give you a rental vehicle to use for the day.

#### *Extended Rental Benefits*

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, warranty repairs, and field service actions.

### Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage or other transportation.

### Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. This should give you and your potential buyer peace of mind.

# Ford Protect

---

## Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

The Ford Protect extended service plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc (if equipped).
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment (if equipped).
- Cabin air filter replacement every 20,000 mi (32,000 km) for electric vehicles only.

## Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 5% down payment provides you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford Protect extended service plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Ford Protect extended service plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan  
P.O. Box 321067  
Detroit, MI 48232

## Ford Protect Extended Service Plan (Canada Only)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Protect extended service plan. Ford Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

**Note:** *Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford Protect extended service plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. Visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Protect extended service plan that is right for you.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes: first is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep the cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual.

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

#### Our Genuine Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock our parts and our authorized branded remanufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use our authorized parts, they may not meet our specifications and could affect emissions compliance.

### Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle comes with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, a message appears in the instrument cluster display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km), hybrid vehicles could exceed 10,000 mi (16,000 km).

When the oil change message appears in the instrument cluster display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of the message appearing. Make sure to reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change.

If your instrument cluster display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5,000 mi (8,000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between oil change intervals.

You can drive your vehicle in such a way that may lead to higher oil consumption including extended time at high engine speeds, high loads, engine braking, hard cornering maneuvers, track and off-road usage. Under these conditions, oil consumption of approximately 1 quart per 500 miles (1 liter per 800 km) is possible. Check the engine oil level at every refueling and adjust to maintain proper levels to avoid engine damage.

# Scheduled Maintenance

You can also drive your vehicle in such a way that dilutes and increases the level of oil by frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, extended idling and low speed driving for long periods of time.

It is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

We strongly recommend only using our genuine or our authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

## Additives and Chemicals

We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

## Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. Have discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination checked immediately.

Make sure to change the vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using our approved flushing chemical.

## Scheduled Maintenance Service Intervals

For your scheduled maintenance service intervals, visit <https://www.ford.com/support/maintenance-schedule>.

## Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections.

Check Every Month
The engine oil level.
Function of all interior and the exterior lights.
The tires including the spare for wear and proper pressure.
The windshield washer fluid level.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Check Every Six Months
The battery connections. Clean if necessary.
The body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
The cooling system fluid level and the coolant system strength.
The door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
The hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
The parking brake for proper operation.
The seatbelts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps, brake, ABS, airbag and seatbelt for operation.
The washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

### Multi-Point Inspection

It is important to have the systems on your vehicle regularly checked. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-Point Inspection	
Accessory drive belt or belts	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels <sup>1</sup> ; fill if necessary	Tires including the spare for wear and proper pressure <sup>2</sup>

# Scheduled Maintenance

Multi-Point Inspection	
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Halfshaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

<sup>1</sup> Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer.

<sup>2</sup> If your vehicle has a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

## NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

### Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™

Your vehicle has an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how you use your vehicle. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

When to Expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED Message	
Interval <sup>1</sup>	Vehicle Use and Example
7,500–10,000 mi (12,000–16,000 km)	<b>Normal</b>
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5,000–7,500 mi (8,000–12,000 km)	<b>Severe</b>
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions

## Scheduled Maintenance

When to Expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED Message	
Interval <sup>1</sup>	Vehicle Use and Example
	Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3,000–5,000 mi (5,000–8,000 km)	<b>Extreme</b>
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation Extended engine idling

<sup>1</sup> Hybrid vehicles may achieve longer distances between oil changes, but do not exceed the 1 year max oil change interval. Remaining oil life can be accessed through the information display. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 115).

### Normal Maintenance Intervals

At Every Oil Change Interval as Indicated by the Information Display <sup>1</sup>
Change the engine oil and filter.
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection, recommended.
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, hoses and the parking brake.
Inspect the engine coolant level/strength and the hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints - all-wheel drive.
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and the U-joints.
Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

<sup>1</sup> Do not exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between service intervals.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Brake Fluid Maintenance <sup>1</sup>	
Every 3 Years	Change the brake fluid. <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perform this maintenance item every 3 years. Do not exceed the designated time for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Brake fluid servicing requires special equipment available at your authorized dealer.

Other Maintenance Items <sup>1</sup>	
Every 20,000 mi (32,000 km)	Replace the cabin air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Replace the engine air filter.
Every 100,000 mi (160,000 km)	Replace the spark plugs.
	Inspect the accessory drive belt(s). <sup>2</sup>
Every 150,000 mi (240,000 km)	Change the automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace the accessory drive belt(s). <sup>3</sup>
At 200,000 mi (322,000 km)	Change the engine coolant. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perform these maintenance items within 3,000 mi (4,800 km) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

<sup>3</sup> If not replaced within the last 100,000 mi (160,000 km).

<sup>4</sup> Initial replacement at 10 years or 200,000 mi (322,000 km), then every five years or 100,000 mi (160,000 km).



# Scheduled Maintenance

## SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3,000 mi (4,800 km) of the **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing in the instrument cluster display.

- **Example 1:** The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message comes on at 28,751 mi (46,270 km). Perform the 30,000 mi (48,000 km) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2:** The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30,000 mi (48,000 km) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25,000 mi (40,000 km)). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Towing a Trailer or Using a Car-top Carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the instrument cluster display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect rear axle and U-joints (AWD).
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

## Scheduled Maintenance

### **Extensive Idling or Low-speed Driving for Long Distances, as in Heavy Commercial Use (Such as Delivery, Taxi, Patrol Car or Livery)** **Short Trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature causing fuel dilution and an increase of the engine oil level**

As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the instrument cluster display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

### **Operating in Dusty or Sandy Conditions (Such as Unpaved or Dusty Roads)**

Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

### **Exclusive Use of E85 (Flex Fuel Vehicles Only)**

Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.
------------------	--

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

### California Fuel Filter Replacement

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

### Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

The normal oil change interval for vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality is 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 2,000 mi (3,000 km).

### Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

### ROLLOVER WARNING



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

### THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU AUTO LINE PROGRAM

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator considers the testimony provided and makes a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information that follows, call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to

## Customer Information

---

try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that needs to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB reviews the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE a Division of BBB National Programs, Inc.  
1676 International Drive, Suite 550  
McLean, VA 22102**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information, refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

### THE MEDIATION AND ARBITRATION PROGRAM

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straightforward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### ORDERING A CANADIAN FRENCH OWNER'S MANUAL

You can obtain a French owner's manual from an authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, LLC at:

HELM, LLC  
47911 Halyard Drive, Suite 200  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

For additional information, visit [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

## Customer Information

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN THE UNITED STATES

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN CANADA

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

#### Transport Canada Contact Information

Website (English)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/recalls">http://tc.canada.ca/recalls</a>
Website (French)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/rappels">http://tc.canada.ca/rappels</a>
Phone	1-800-333-0510

#### Ford of Canada Contact Information

Website	<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>
Phone	1-800-565-3673

## Customer Information

### THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

### RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

#### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Short Range Radar (SRR)	Continental	SRR3-B

#### Argentina



#### Brazil



#### Canada

Short Range Radar Sensor SRR3-B  
IC ID: 4135A-SRR3B

#### Belarus



# Customer Information

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada’s licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1. This device may not cause interference.
- 2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure information:  
This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and the body of any persons, user or bystander.

L’émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d’Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L’exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

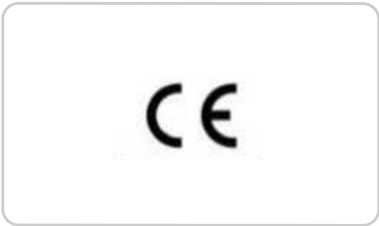
- 1. L’appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
- 2. L’appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d’en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 8 in (20 cm) de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

## Djibouti



## European Union EU





# Customer Information

## Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: 3R8-8M-7DF-231

## Malaysia



## Israel

HIDF16000009

## Mauritania

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-63484  
2. תל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה פקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלקטרוניות.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0727/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément : 10/12/2019

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA - SRR3-B.

## Mexico

IFETEL: RLVCSR15-0904

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes  
dos condiciones:

- (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
- (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

# Customer Information

## Moldova



## Russia



## Serbia



N011 18

## Pakistan



## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## Paraguay



## Customer Information

### South Africa

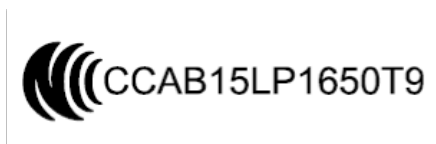


### South Korea



MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3B

### Taiwan



#### 警語

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

## Customer Information

---

### Ukraine



справжнім fIDC. Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH заявляє, що тип радіообладнання SRR3 - В відповідає технічному регламенту радіообладнання ;

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою :

<http://continental.automotive-approvals.com/>

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER62934

DEALER No:  
DA40068

### United Kingdom



### United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

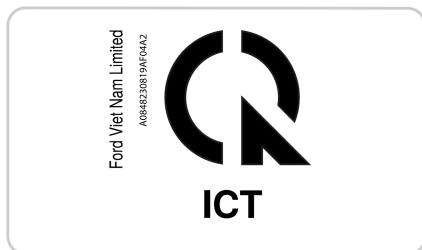
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### CAUTION TO USERS

## Customer Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Vietnam



### Zambia



### BODY CONTROL MODULE

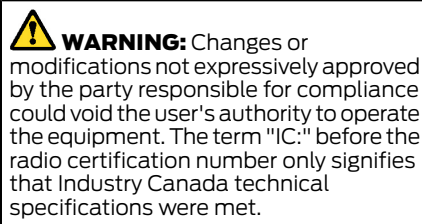
#### Argentina



#### Brazil



#### Canada and United States of America



FCC ID: LXPP004

IC: 2298A-P004

# Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X4D

## European Union EU



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – P004R.

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-113

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – P004.

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA - P005

## Customer Information

### Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0801/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0768/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 11/03/2020

### Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24200 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 27/05/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 23513 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 24/03/2020

### Moldova



### Paraguay



2020-07-I-0405  
2021-01-0037

# Customer Information

## Serbia



W011 20

## South Korea



R-R-175-P005

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## Taiwan, China



CCAB20LP1130T4

## South Africa



CCAB20LP1140T7





## Customer Information

---

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



CCAB20LP1150T0

TRA

REGISTERED NO: ER81344/20

DEALER NO: DA88113/20



CCAB20LP1160T0

TRA

REGISTERED NO: ER80748/20

DEALER NO: DA83047/19

### Ukraine



UA.TR.028

TRA

REGISTERED NO: ER81343/20

DEALER NO: DA88113/20

### United Kingdom

**UK  
CA**

# Customer Information

## Zambia



### CRUISE CONTROL MODULE (If Equipped)

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Mid Range Radar (MRR)	Delphi/Aptiv	L2C0065TR

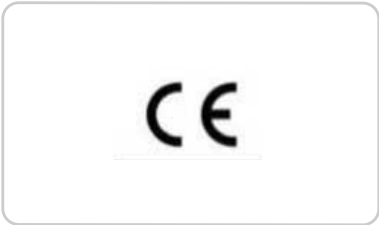
## Argentina

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 594/dpt/2017  
Date d'agrément : 09/04/2017



## European Union EU



## Brazil



# Customer Information

## Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: OR2-9H-7E1-x4D

## Malaysia



## Indonesia

SERTIFIKAT NOMOR : 53104/SDPPI/2017  
PLG ID: 4927



HIDF16000009

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément: 0409/ARE/2017  
Date d'agrément: 12/04/2017

## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-63483  
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או חוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

## Moldova



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA - L2C0065TR.

## Customer Information

---

### Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément: MR 13639 ARNT 2017  
Date d'agrément: 28/03/2017

### Serbia



### Pakistan



### Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards  
DA105753

### Paraguay



### South Africa



TA2017-1923

## Customer Information

---

### South Korea

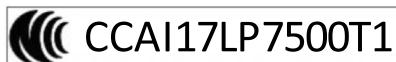


R-CMM-DLH-L2C0065TR

### Syria

SyTRA  
REGISTERED No:  
FR00085-17

### Taiwan, China



### Ukraine



### United Arab Emirates



### United Kingdom



# Customer Information

## United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2C0065TR

IC: 3432A-0065TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Zambia



**ZICTA**

ZMB/ZICTZ/TA/2018/4/2

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER

### United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: NZLSAHL5E

IC: 4112A-SAHL5E

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

### Argentina

CNC: H-16366



COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

## Customer Information

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

**CNC ID: H-24101**

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

**CNC ID: H-22290**

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

**CNC ID: H-16355**

### Brazil

 **ANATEL**

Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

**02445-16-01821**

 **ANATEL**

Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

**02444-16-01821**

 **ANATEL**

Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

**00524-14-08605**

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 289/MCPT/SC/116

Date d'agrément : 02/07/2016

### Ghana

**NCA APPROVED: 2R9-8M-7E0-x94**

## Customer Information

---

**NCA APPROVED: 2R9-1H-7E0-01A**

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – N5F-A08TAA.

### **Jamaica**

### **Jordan**

Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2016/142  
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931426

### **Malaysia**



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

F17000176

### **Mauritania**

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA – A2C97102000

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0323/ARE/2016  
Date d'agrément : 07/03/2016

**This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA – A2C93142100**



## Customer Information

---

### Moldova



### Paraguay



### Morocco

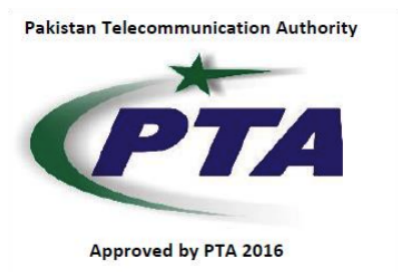
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 12433 ANRT 2016  
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2016

NR: 2016-9-I-000223  
NR: 2016-9-I-000222  
NR: 2016-9-I-000220  
NR: 2018-07-I-000317

### Serbia



### Pakistan



### Singapore

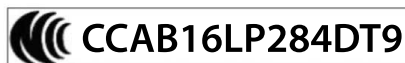
Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

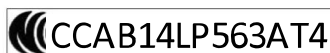
## Customer Information

---

### South Africa

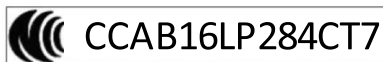


### South Korea



MSIP-CRM-TAL-A2C97102000

### Taiwan, China



## Customer Information

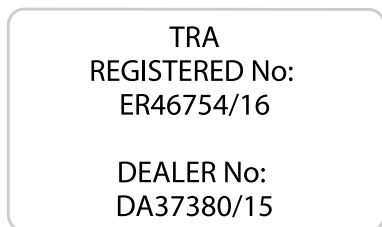
### Ukraine



### Zambia



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



### RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

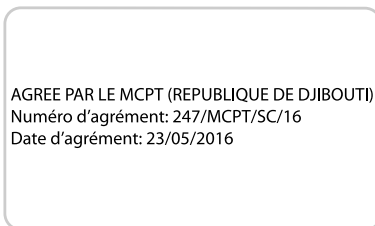
### Argentina



### Vietnam



### Djibouti



E272192

## Customer Information

### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: NCA/TA/16/24

### Moldova



### Indonesia

SERTIFIKAT NOMOR : 44813/SDPPI/2016  
PLG ID: 4940

### Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 8921 ANRT 2014  
Date d'agrément : 04/02/2014

### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – FO3-AM433RX

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA - FO4-AM902TRB.

### Pakistan

### Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0233/ARE/2014  
Date d'agrément : 14/11/2014

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2015

## Customer Information

---

### Paraguay



NR: 2016-9-I-00244

### Serbia



### South Korea



KCC-REM-DDG-FO3

### Syria

SyTRA  
REGISTERED No:  
1508/4NK

### Taiwan, China

### South Africa

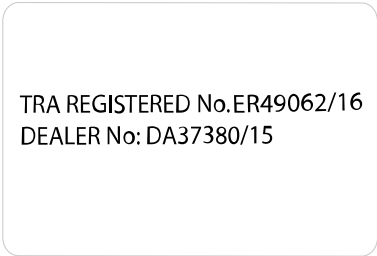


# Customer Information

## Ukraine



## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



## United States and Canada

**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2C0062TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Zambia



# Customer Information

## SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4 SYNC-G4L

## Argentina



## Brazil



08657-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção  
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar  
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção  
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar  
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019  
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

# Customer Information

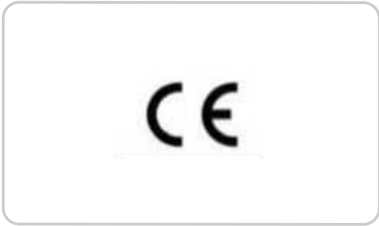


## Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



## European Union EU



Model: SYNC-G4L  
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180



## Customer Information

---

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

### Malaysia



### Moldova



### Morocco

HIDF16000009

### Mauritania

**AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE**  
**Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018**  
**Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019**

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019  
07 AOUT 2019

## Customer Information

### Serbia

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019  
07 AOÛT 2019



M005 20

### Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2019

### Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

### Paraguay



CONATEL

### South Africa

TA-2019/2465



APPROVED

2020-03-I-00192

2020-03-I-00193

## Customer Information

---

TA-2019/2466



CCAB20LP0300T1

### South Korea



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNG4



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNG4L

### Ukraine



UA.TR.028

### Taiwan



CCAB20LP0290T8

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

UAE - TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER74902/19  
DEALER No:  
DA37380/15

## Customer Information

TRA  
REGISTERED No: ER74903/19  
DEALER No: DA37380/15

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### Zambia



### United Kingdom



### United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.



FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

## Customer Information

### TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

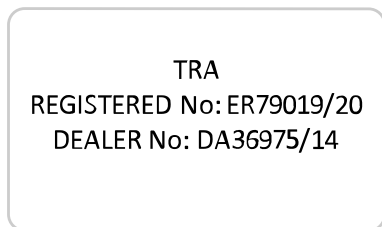
#### Brazil



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

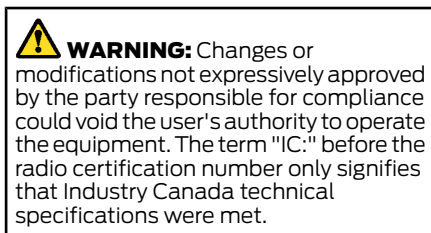


### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 315 MHZ SENSORS

#### Brazil



#### United States and Canada



FCC ID: LHJ-FB40ND1

IC: 2807E-FB40ND1

#### Mexico

IFT: RCPCAG18-1886  
"La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:  
(1) es posible que este  
equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y  
(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar  
cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar  
su operación no deseada."

## Customer Information

### Taiwan

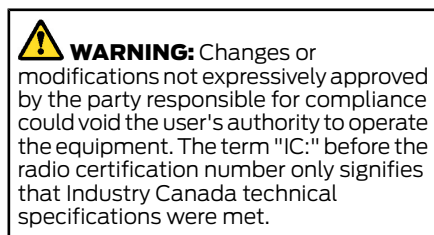


### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 433 MHZ SENSORS

### Argentina



### United States and Canada



FCC ID: MRXAG2SM3

IC: 2546A-AG2SM3

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### Brazil



### Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

Nº d'homologation: HIR -0081/6/2018

Date d'homologation: 18/6/2018

# Customer Information

---

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE  
DJIBOUTI)

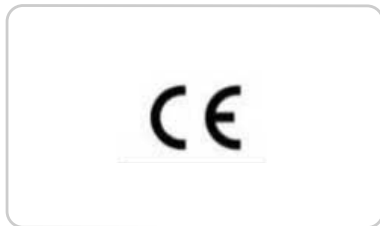
Numéro d'agrément:

045/DDTIC/2018

Date d'agrément:

06/05/18

## European Union EU



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type AG2SM4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

[http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration\\_conformities](http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities)

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

# Customer Information

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: BR3-1M-GE2-X74

## Mexico

IFT: RLVSCAG18-1012  
"La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:  
(1) es posible que este  
equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y  
(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar  
cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar  
su operación no deseada."

## Israel

1. מסמך זה

SCHRAIDER ELECTRONICS

AGCSM

מסמך

מסמך

מסמך

מסמך

מסמך	מסמך	מסמך	מסמך	מסמך
ASK	320.00	0.000010	434.7900	433.0500

2. מסמך זה

## Moldova



## Morocco

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément: 0489/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément: 04/25/2018

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément: MR 16506 ANRT 2018  
Date d'agrément: 09/05/2018



## Customer Information

### Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

### Paraguay



### Oman

OMAN TRA  
R/5505/18  
D172249

NR: 2018-06-I-000224

**Customs Union (CU) - Belarus,  
Kazakhstan and Russia**



### Serbia

### Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2016



W005 21

# Customer Information

## Sierra Leone



TAN: 2018-002-0025

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

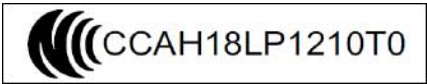
DA 107968

## South Korea



R-CRM-SRD-AG2SM4

## Taiwan



## South Africa



## Ukraine



## Customer Information

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER97590/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

### United Kingdom



### United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXAG2SM4

IC: 2546A- AG2SM4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### Vietnam



C0170230620AF04A2

### Zambia



# Customer Information

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE (If Equipped)

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	Delphi/Aptiv	WACM

### Argentina



COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-21576



ANATEL

Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

15861-21-12270

### Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC  
N° d'homologation: HER -  
0055/Octobre/2021  
Date d'homologation: 14/10/2021

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 004/DDTIC/2019  
Date d'agrément : 10/01/2019

### Brazil



ANATEL

Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

04021-18-06661

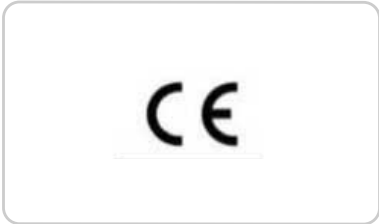
# Customer Information

## Israel

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 133/DDTIC/2021  
Date d'agrément : 07/09/2021

1. מספר אישור התאמת מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-81682  
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות בטכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבר לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלקטרויות.

## European Union EU



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA - WACM.

This product has been Type Approved By Jamaica:  
SMA – WACM3

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E1-174

## Malaysia



NCA APPROVED: 7E5-7M-110-RDR

# Customer Information

CIDFI9000037

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0474/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément : 05/03/2018

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0964/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 7/12/2021

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 15474 ANRT 2017  
Date d'agrément : 25/12/2017

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00029420 ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 11/07/2021

## Moldova



## Paraguay



NR: 2017-10-I-0000333  
NR: 2021-08-I-0489

# Customer Information

## Russia



## Serbia



V011 18



V005 21

## Sierra Leone



TAN: 2022-002-0020

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

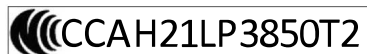
DA 00461

## South Africa



## Customer Information

---



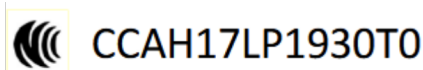
### South Korea



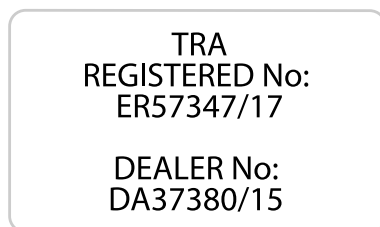
### Ukraine



### Taiwan



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)





## Customer Information

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER98640/21

DEALER No:  
DA37380/15

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER98639/21

DEALER No:  
DA37380/15

### United Kingdom

**UK  
CA**

### United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2C0066T

FCC ID: L2C0084T

FCC ID: L2C0074TR

FCC ID: L2C0084TR

IC ID: 3432A-0074TR

IC ID: 3432A-0084TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### Vietnam

Ford Vietnam  
A00182015



## Customer Information

---

### Zambia



### PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:  
[www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

### REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

### Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

## Customer Information

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

### MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

### END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

#### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

# Customer Information

---

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

## Customer Information

---

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.
- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

### UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## Customer Information

---

### **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

### **No Liability for Certain Damages:**

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

### **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

# Customer Information

---

## General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

# Customer Information

---

## Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL



## Customer Information

---

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

### Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

### Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.

Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

## Customer Information

---

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

## Customer Information

---

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

# Customer Information

---

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

## Customer Information

---

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

### 5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

### 6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

# Customer Information

---

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## 7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## 8. Miscellaneous

### 8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### 8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

# Customer Information

---

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

## 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

## Terms and Conditions

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.



## Customer Information

---

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such



# Customer Information

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

## I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

## Customer Information

---

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

# Customer Information

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data. End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

### III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

### IV. Middle East Territory

# Customer Information

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

## Customer Information

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

# Customer Information

Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

## VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.pasma.com.au](http://www.pasma.com.au)).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

## AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

## Customer Information

---

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

### **VII. China Territory**

#### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

## Customer Information

---

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### **Restrictions**

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### **Limited Warranty**

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

### **Customer Remedies**

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

### **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

### **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR



## Customer Information

---

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

### **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

### **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

### **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

### **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

### **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

### **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

## Customer Information

---

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

# Customer Information

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

## Customer Information

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

### 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

### 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **"Suppliers"**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## EMISSION LAW



**WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.

# Customer Information



Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel

Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

## Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.

- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.
- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climatic conditions.

**Note:** Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

**Note:** If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

## EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's

## Customer Information

Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

### WARRANTY INFORMATION

The following warranties may apply to your vehicle:

- New vehicle limited warranties.
- Emissions warranties, if applicable. (Note: Fully-electric vehicles are not eligible for emissions warranties.)
- Other warranties, if applicable.

Detailed warranty information specific to your vehicle can be found in the Warranty Guide at [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

The following California Warranty Statement, required by California regulations, applies to vehicles certified to California emissions standards and registered in a state that requires California emissions warranty. If applicable, additional California Emissions Warranties can be found in the Warranty Guide at [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

### CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT

#### YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS

The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your (year) vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designated, built and equipped to meet

the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford Motor Company must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies. Where a warrantable condition exists, Ford Motor Company will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

#### MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY COVERAGE:

(For 1990 and subsequent model passenger cars, light-duty trucks, and medium-duty vehicles.)

- For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first);

1) If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford Motor Company to ensure that your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

2) If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford Motor Company. This is your short-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

- For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever occurs first);

1) If an emission-related part listed in this warranty booklet specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford Motor Company. This is your long-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

## Customer Information

---

### **OWNER'S WARRANTY RESPONSIBILITIES:**

- As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. Ford Motor Company recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Ford Motor Company cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

- You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Ford or Lincoln dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

- As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, you should contact Ford Customer Service at 1-800-392-3673 or the California Air Resource Board at 9528 Telstar Avenue, El Monte, CA 91731.

## Appendices

### ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

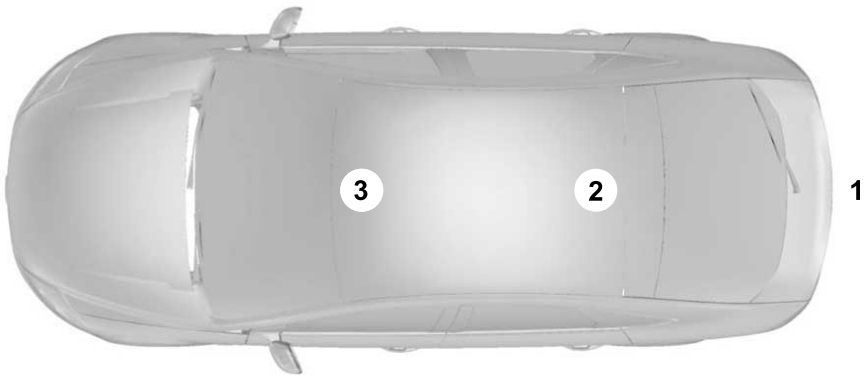


**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

#### Car

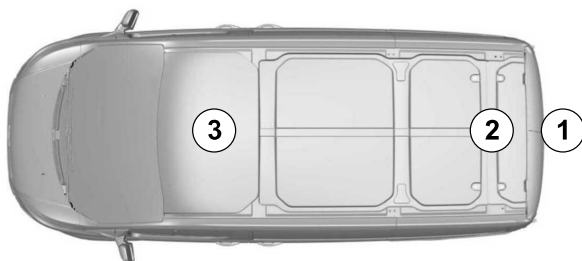




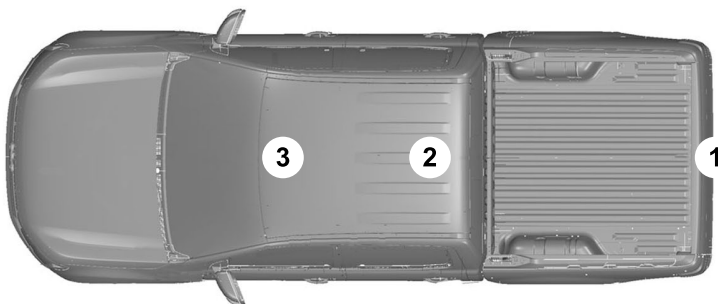
# Appendices

---

## Van



## Truck



## Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

**Note:** After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

# Index

## 1

12V Battery.....	367
12V Battery Precautions.....	367
Battery Management System	
Limitations.....	368
Changing the 12V Battery.....	368
Charging the 12V Battery.....	371
How Does the Battery Management	
System Work.....	368
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V	
Battery.....	371
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	370
What Is the Battery Management	
System.....	368
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	371
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	371
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	371

## 3

360 Degree Camera.....	250
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	250
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	250
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	250

## 9

911 Assist.....	60
-----------------	----

## A

### A/C

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch	
Center Display Screen/Automatic	
Temperature Control.....	134
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch	
Center Display Screen/Automatic	
Temperature Control.....	129
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual	
Temperature Control.....	139
About This Publication.....	19
ABS.....	
See: Brakes.....	222
Accessing Navigation.....	458
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position.....	175

Accessing the Trip Computer - Vehicles	
With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster	
Display Screen.....	121
Accessing the Trip Computer - Vehicles	
With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display	
Screen.....	121
AC Charging.....	206
Connecting the Charger.....	206
Stopping Charging.....	207
Active Park Assist.....	253
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting.....	255
Active Park Assist Precautions.....	253
Active Park Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	255
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	255
Active Park Assist – Information	
Messages.....	255
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	259
Lane Centering.....	264
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	267
Predictive Speed Assist.....	268
Predictive Speed Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	272
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation.....	262
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	264
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Limitations.....	260
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Precautions.....	259
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	101
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	373
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting	
Brightness.....	96
Adjusting the Map.....	458
Changing the Format of the Map.....	458
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	458
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	45
Adjusting the Seatbelts During	
Pregnancy.....	45
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	439
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	83
Adjusting the Volume.....	438
Aid Mode.....	281
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	281
What Is Aid Mode.....	281
Airbag Precautions.....	52

# Index

Airbags.....	50	Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	80
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	54	How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....	80
Air Conditioning		What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	80
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	134	What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	80
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	129	Appendices.....	550
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	139	Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	225
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	426	Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency.....	225
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	426	App Precautions.....	456
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	427	App Requirements.....	456
Alert and Aid Mode.....	281	Apps.....	456
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	281	Audio System.....	438
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	281	Digital Radio.....	440
Alert Mode.....	280	FM Radio.....	439
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity.....	280	Satellite Radio.....	441
How Does Alert Mode Work.....	280	Audio System Precautions.....	438
What Is Alert Mode.....	280	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	100
Alexa Built-In.....	448	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations.....	100
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	448	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	100
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	448	Auto Hold.....	233
All-Wheel Drive.....	221	Auto Hold Indicators.....	234
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	221	Autolamps.....	90
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	221	Autolamp Settings.....	90
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	221	What Are Autolamps.....	90
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	221	Autolock.....	67
All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....	221	Autolock Requirements.....	67
Ambient Lighting.....	97	What Is Autolock.....	67
Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	97	Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	226
Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off.....	97	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	331
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	222	Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	332
Anti-Lock Braking System Indicators.....	222	Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	332
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....	222	What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	331
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	80	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	300
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	80	Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off.....	300
		What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....	300
		Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	175
		How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work.....	175

# Index

Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	175	Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	429
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off.....	175	Automatic Transmission Position Indicators.....	216
What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	175	Automatic Transmission Positions.....	215
Automatic High Beam Control.....	92	Drive (D).....	216
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	94	Low (L).....	216
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....	93	Neutral (N).....	215
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....	93	Park (P).....	215
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....	93	Reverse (R).....	215
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	92	Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	215
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	94	Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	219
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	94	Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	219
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	94	Auto Mode.....	130
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	94	Auto Mode Indicators.....	131
Automatic Locking Mode.....	44	Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	130
Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	44	Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	132
Engaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	44	Auto-Start-Stop.....	186
What Is Automatic Locking Mode.....	44	Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	187
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	218	Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	187
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations.....	218	Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	186
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work.....	218	Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	187
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings.....	217	Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	188
Automatic Transmission.....	215	Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	187
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	218	Autounlock.....	67
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	215	Autounlock Requirements.....	67
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	219	Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	67
Grade Assist - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	219	What Is Autounlock.....	67
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	217	Autowipers.....	84
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	429	Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	85
		Autowipers Settings.....	84
		What Are Autowipers.....	84
		AWD	
		See: All-Wheel Drive.....	221
		<b>B</b>	
		Battery Charge.....	119
		Beginning a Voice Interaction.....	446

# Index

Blind Spot Assist.....	283	What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	290
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	284	Bluetooth®.....	455
Blind Spot Assist – Information Messages.....	285	Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	351
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	283	Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	351
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	283	Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	351
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	283	Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	351
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	285	Bonnet Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	354
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....	286	Booster Seats.....	39
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage – Information Messages.....	287	Brake Coach.....	119
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	285	Brake Fluid Specification.....	223
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....	285	Brake Over Accelerator.....	222
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	285	Brake Precautions.....	222
Blind Spot Information System.....	289	Brakes.....	222
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	292	Anti-Lock Braking System.....	222
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	290	Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	224
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	292	Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	224
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	289	Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	224
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	289	Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	224
Blind Spot Information System Requirements.....	290	Breaking-In.....	323
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	292		
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	292	<b>C</b>	
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps.....	292	Calculating Payload.....	309
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	290	Calculating the Load Limit.....	309
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	291	Canceling the Set Speed.....	258
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work.....	291	Capacities and Specifications.....	412
Selecting a Trailer.....	292	Catalytic Converter.....	199
Setting a Trailer Length.....	291	Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	199
Switching Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage On and Off.....	291	Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	199
		Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	199
		Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	199
		Center Display Limitations.....	443
		Center Display Overview.....	443
		Center Display Precautions.....	443
		Changing a Flat Tire.....	406
		Changing a Road Wheel.....	406
		Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	62

# Index

Changing the Remote Control Battery – Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key.....	64
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	436
Charge Port Indicators.....	205
Charging a Device.....	163
Charging a Wireless Device.....	167
Charging Equipment.....	202
Charging Your Vehicle.....	201
AC Charging.....	206
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	213
Charging Your Vehicle Precautions.....	201
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	213
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	214
Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	213
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	223
Checking the Seatbelts.....	47
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	394
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	86
Children and Airbags.....	53
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	32
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	32
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	33
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	32
Child Restraints.....	33
Child Restraint Position Information.....	33
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	34
Child Safety.....	31
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	32
Child Restraints.....	33
Installing Child Restraints.....	34
Child Safety Locks.....	41
Child Safety Precautions.....	31
Cleaning Products.....	375
Cleaning the Exterior.....	376
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	377
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	376
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	376
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	377
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	377
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	376
Cleaning the Underbody.....	377
Cleaning Wheels.....	376
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	376
Cleaning the Interior.....	377
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	379
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	378
Cleaning Fabric.....	378
Cleaning Leather.....	378
Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....	379
Cleaning Plastic.....	378
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	379
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	377
Cleaning Vinyl.....	379
Climate Control.....	129
Auto Mode.....	130
Climate Control Hints.....	132
Closing the Liftgate.....	73
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	76
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	73
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	77
Cold Weather Precautions.....	323
Connected Navigation.....	458
Connected Vehicle.....	433
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	434
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	433
Connected Vehicle Data.....	26
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	433
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	433
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	434
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	434
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	434
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	455
Connecting a Trailer.....	315
Connecting a Trailer Precautions.....	315
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	433
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	433

# Index

Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	433
What Is the Modem.....	433
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	433
Connecting Your Phone.....	450
Contacting Us.....	17
Coolant.....	364
Adding Coolant.....	364
Changing the Coolant.....	365
Checking the Coolant Level.....	364
Coolant – Information Messages.....	367
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	366
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	366
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	420
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	421
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV).....	422
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L Duratec, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	423
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	327
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	331
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	333
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	328
Post-Crash Alert System.....	331
Recovery Towing.....	332
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	57
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	436
Cross Traffic Alert.....	294
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	296
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	295
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	296
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	294
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	294
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	296
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	296
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	295
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	295
What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	295
Cruise Control.....	257
Cruise Control Indicators.....	258
Cup Holders.....	168
Cup Holder Precautions.....	168
Customer Assistance.....	338
Customer Information.....	474
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	477
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	117
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	116
<b>D</b>	
Data Privacy.....	24
Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades.....	383
Digital Radio.....	440
Digital Radio Indicators.....	441
Digital Radio Limitations.....	440
How Does Digital Radio Work.....	440
Switching Digital Radio Reception On and Off.....	441
What Is Digital Radio.....	440
Dinghy Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
Directing the Flow of Air.....	130
Disposing of Airbags.....	58
Distance Indication.....	299
Distance Indication Indicator.....	300
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	300



# Index

What Is Distance Indication.....	299
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	68
Doors and Locks.....	66
Autolock.....	67
Autounlock.....	67
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	68
Mislock.....	68
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	66
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	66
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	68
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions.....	69
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	68
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	68
Drive Mode Control.....	273
Drive Modes.....	274
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes.....	274
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Troubleshooting.....	276
Drive Modes.....	274
Eco.....	274
Normal.....	274
Slippery.....	274
Sport.....	274
Driver Alert.....	305
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	306
Driver Alert Precautions.....	305
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	306
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	306
Driving Economically.....	323
Driving Hints.....	323
Driving in Special Conditions.....	324
Driving in Special Conditions.....	324
Driving In Sand.....	324
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	324
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	324
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	323
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	325
Drowsiness Monitor	
See: Driver Alert.....	305

# E

Easy Entry and Exit.....	72
Eco Coach.....	277
Electric Economy.....	119
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	226
Electric Parking Brake.....	225
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	226
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	226
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	227
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	226
Electric Power Steering.....	238
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	238
How Does Electric Power Steering Work.....	238
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	550
Emergency Call Limitations.....	60
Emergency Call Requirements.....	60
Emergency Call System Data.....	27
Emergency Towing - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	336
Emergency Towing - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	336
Emission Law.....	546
Enabling Apps on an Android Device.....	456
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	456
Enabling Remote Start.....	126
End User License Agreement.....	521
Engine Air Filter.....	360
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	360
Engine Block Heater.....	172
Engine Block Heater Precautions.....	172
How Does the Engine Block Heater Work.....	173
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	173
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	111
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	416

# Index

Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	418
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	419
Engine Oil.....	359
Adding Engine Oil.....	359
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	359
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	359
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	360
Engine Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	412
Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	413
Engine Specifications - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	414
Entering a Parallel Parking Space.....	253
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space.....	254
Environment.....	28
Evasive Steering Assist.....	301
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	301
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	301
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	301
EV Coach.....	118
Event Data.....	25
Exiting a Parking Space.....	254
Export Unique Options.....	547
Extending the Remote Start Duration.....	126
Exterior Lamps.....	91
Exterior Lamp Indicators.....	92
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	92
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	91
Using the Front Fog Lamps.....	92
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	91
Exterior Lighting Control.....	89
Exterior Lighting.....	89
Autolamps.....	90
Automatic High Beam Control.....	92
Automatic High Beam Control - Troubleshooting.....	94
Exterior Lamps.....	91

Headlamps.....	89
Headlamps - Troubleshooting.....	90
Exterior Lighting Videos.....	95
Exterior Mirrors.....	101

## F

Fail-Safe Cooling.....	333
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated.....	334
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	334
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	333
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	333
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	43
Feature Bar - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen.....	444
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	406
Flat Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
Floor Mats.....	325
FM Radio.....	439
FM Radio Limitations.....	439
Selecting an FM Radio Station.....	439
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	101
Ford Protect.....	463
Forward Collision Warning.....	300
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	300
What Is Forward Collision Warning.....	300

# Index

Four Wheels Down Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
Front Parking Aid.....	242
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	243
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	243
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	243
What Is the Front Parking Aid.....	242
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	54
Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators.....	56
Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions.....	56
How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work.....	54
What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System.....	54
Front Seat Precautions.....	144
Front Seats.....	144
Heated Seats.....	149
Manual Seats.....	145
Power Seats.....	147
Fuel and Refueling.....	189
Fuel and Refueling - Troubleshooting.....	197
Fuel Quality.....	189
Refueling.....	192
Running Out of Fuel.....	190
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	189
Fuel and Refueling - Troubleshooting.....	197
Fuel and Refueling - Information Messages.....	197
Fuel and Refueling - Warning Lamps.....	197
Fuel Economy Display - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	118
Fuel Economy Display - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	118
Fuel Gauge.....	110
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	110
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	110
What Is Distance to Empty.....	110
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	110
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	110
Fuel Quality.....	189
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	189
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBoost™/ 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	423
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV).....	424
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.5L Duratec, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	425
Fuel Tank Capacity.....	197
Fuse Precautions.....	345
Fuses.....	345
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	351
Fuses - Troubleshooting.....	353
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	345
Fuses - Troubleshooting.....	353
Fuses - Frequently Asked Questions.....	353

## G

Garage Door Opener Additional Assistance.....	162
Garage Door Opener.....	159
Garage Door Opener Introduction.....	159
Garage Door Opener Precautions and Frequencies.....	159
General Maintenance Information.....	465
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....	341
Getting the Services You Need.....	338
Glasses Holder.....	168
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	168
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	389
Grade Assist - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	219
How Does Grade Assist Work.....	219

# Index

<b>H</b>	
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	373
Headlamps.....	89
Headlamp Indicators.....	89
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	89
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	89
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	90
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	90
Head Up Display.....	122
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....	125
Head Up Display Indicators.....	124
Head Up Display Settings - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	123
Head Up Display Settings - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	122
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....	125
Head Up Display – Information Messages.....	125
Heated Seats.....	149
Heated Seat Precautions.....	149
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	150
Heating	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	134
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	129
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	139
High Voltage Battery.....	200
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	200
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	327
High Voltage Battery Videos.....	200
Hill Start Assist.....	232
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	232
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	232
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	232
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	232
Home Screen - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen.....	444
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	354
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	259
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work.....	179
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....	221
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	233
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	289
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	294
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	305
How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work.....	72
How Does Eco Coach Work.....	277
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	232
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work.....	277
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work.....	298
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	297
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	228
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work.....	303
How Does Stability Control Work.....	237
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	250
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	279
How Does the Personal Safety System Work.....	49
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	154
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work.....	51
How Does Traction Control Work.....	235
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	322
How Does Trip Summary Work.....	277
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	50
How Do the Knee Airbags Work.....	51

# Index

How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	50
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics.....	179
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators.....	179
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	179
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	180
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	181
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	182
Power Flow.....	183
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	180
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Frequently Asked Questions.....	180
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Information Messages.....	180
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Warning Lamps.....	180
<b>I</b>	
Icon Glossary	
See: Symbols Glossary.....	21
Icons	
See: Symbols Glossary.....	21
Identifying Fuse Types.....	353
Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	139
Ignition Switch.....	169
In California (U.S. Only).....	339
Inflating the Tires.....	394
Information On Demand Screen – Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen.....	445
Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	384
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	396
Inspecting the Tire for Wear.....	395
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems.....	400
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover.....	313
Installing Child Restraints.....	34
Combining the Seatbelt and Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Restraints.....	38
Installing a Child Restraint in a Center Seat.....	37
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children.....	36
Using Seatbelts.....	34
Using Tether Straps.....	38
Instrument Cluster Display.....	115
Personalized Settings.....	117
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu – Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	116
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu – Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	115
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	113
Instrument Cluster.....	104
Fuel Gauge.....	110
Instrument Cluster Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™/2.0L EcoBoost™, Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	104
Instrument Cluster Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™/2.0L EcoBoost™, Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	105
Instrument Cluster Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	108
Instrument Cluster Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	106
Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	109
Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	107
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	111
Instrument Panel.....	30
Interior Air Quality.....	143
Refreshing the Interior Air.....	143
Interior Lamp Function.....	96
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	96
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	96

# Index

Interior Lighting.....	96
Ambient Lighting.....	97
Interior Lamp Function.....	96
Interior Mirror.....	100
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	100
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	100
Introduction.....	19

## J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	328
Jump Starting Precautions.....	328
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	328
Preparing the Vehicle.....	328

## K

Keyless Entry.....	70
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	71
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	70
Keyless Entry Settings.....	70
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	71
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	71
Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings.....	65
Keys and Remote Controls.....	61
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	65
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	65
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	65

## L

Lane Centering.....	264
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	264
Lane Centering Alerts.....	266
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	266
Lane Centering Indicators.....	267
Lane Centering Limitations.....	265
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	267
Lane Centering Precautions.....	265
Lane Centering Requirements.....	265
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	266

Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	267
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	267
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	282
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	282
Lane Keeping System.....	279
Aid Mode.....	281
Alert and Aid Mode.....	281
Alert Mode.....	280
Blind Spot Assist.....	283
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	285
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	288
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	280
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	279
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	288
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	288
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	319
Liftgate.....	73
Closing the Liftgate.....	73
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	78
Opening the Liftgate.....	73
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....	78
Liftgate Precautions.....	73
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	78
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....	79
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	78
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	78
Live Traffic.....	458
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	458
What Is Live Traffic.....	458
Load Carrying.....	307
Roof Rack.....	311
Load Carrying Precautions.....	307
Loading Your Trailer.....	318
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	250
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	290

# Index

Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	222	Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	225
Locating the Cabin Air Filter.....	143	Manual Seats.....	145
Locating the Charge Port.....	204	Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	145
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	295	Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	146
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	190	Adjusting the Seat Height.....	147
Locating the Memory Function Buttons.....	157	Folding the Seat Backrest.....	152
Locating the Power Outlets.....	165	Head Restraint Components.....	145
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	299	Installing the Head Restraint.....	146
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	299	Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	146
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	247	Removing the Head Restraint.....	146
Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels.....	308	Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	153
Locating the Tire label.....	383	Memory Function.....	157
Locating the USB Ports.....	163	Memory Function Precautions.....	157
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	166	Mislock.....	68
Locating Your Vehicle.....	62	Mislock Limitations.....	68
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	99	Switching Mislock On and Off.....	68
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	314	What Is Mislock.....	68
Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	314	Mobile Communications Equipment.....	521
Luggage Compartment Anchor Point Precautions.....	314	Mobile Device Data.....	27
Luggage Compartment.....	313	Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	103
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	314	Overriding Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	103
		What Is Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	103
		Moonroof.....	102
		Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	103
		Motorcraft Parts - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	415
		Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	415
		Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	416
		Muting the Audio.....	439
<b>M</b>		<b>N</b>	
Maintenance.....	354	Navigation Map Updates.....	458
12V Battery.....	367	Navigation.....	458
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	371	Adjusting the Map.....	458
Coolant.....	364	Live Traffic.....	458
Engine Air Filter.....	360	Route Guidance.....	459
Engine Oil.....	359	Setting a Destination.....	458
Maintenance Precautions.....	354	Waypoints.....	459
Maintenance Videos.....	374		
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	452		
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror.....	100		

# Index

## Neutral Towing

- See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....335
- See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....335
- See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....335

## Neutral Tow

- See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....335
- See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....335
- See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....335

## Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....468

## O

- Opening and Closing the Flip Key.....61
- Opening and Closing the Hood.....354
- Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....102
- Opening and Closing the Sunshade.....102
- Opening and Closing the Windows.....98
- Opening the Liftgate.....73
  - Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....75
  - Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....73
  - Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....73
- Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....66
  - Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Locking Button.....67
  - Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....67

- Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....66
- Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....66
  - Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....66
  - Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....66
  - Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....66
- Ordering a Canadian French Owner's Manual.....475
- Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....343
- OTA
  - See: Software Update Settings.....460
  - See: Vehicle Software Updates.....460
- Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....229
- Overriding the Set Speed.....264
- Over the air
  - See: Software Update Settings.....460
- Over-the-air
  - See: Software Update Settings.....460
  - See: Vehicle Software Updates.....460
  - See: Vehicle Software Updates.....460

## P

- Parking Aid Indicators.....245
- Parking Aid Precautions.....241
- Parking Aids.....241
  - Front Parking Aid.....242
  - Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....245
  - Rear Parking Aid.....242
  - Side Parking Aid.....243
- Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....245
  - Parking Aids – Information Messages.....245
- Passive Anti-Theft System.....80
  - How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....80
  - What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....80
- Pedestrian Alert System.....59
- Pedestrian Alert System Videos.....59
- Perchlorate.....520
- Performing a System Reset.....462



# Index

Personalized Settings.....	117	Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	331
Changing the Instrument Cluster Display		Switching the Post-Crash Alert System	
Language.....	117	Off.....	331
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	117	What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	331
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	118	Power Flow.....	183
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	118	How Does Power Flow Work.....	183
Personal Safety System		What Is Power Flow.....	183
Components.....	49	Power Gauge.....	110
Personal Safety System™.....	49	Power Outlet.....	165
Phone Menu.....	450	Power Outlet Precautions.....	165
Phone.....	450	Power Seats.....	147
Phone Precautions.....	450	Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	147
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	455	Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	149
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	163	Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	149
Playing or Pausing the Audio		Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	149
Source.....	438	Adjusting the Seat Height.....	149
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive		Head Restraint Components.....	147
Modes.....	274	Installing the Head Restraint.....	148
Auto EV.....	274	Moving the Seat Backward and	
EV Later.....	274	Forward.....	148
EV Now.....	275	Removing the Head Restraint.....	148
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive		Power-Up	
Modes – Troubleshooting.....	276	See: Software Update Settings.....	460
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes		See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	460
– Information Messages.....	276	Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	298
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle		Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	298
Information.....	181	Pre-Collision Assist.....	297
How Does a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle		Automatic Emergency Braking.....	300
Work.....	181	Distance Indication.....	299
How Does Low Engine Use Mode		Evasive Steering Assist.....	301
Work.....	182	Forward Collision Warning.....	300
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving		Pre-Collision Assist –	
Characteristics.....	181	Troubleshooting.....	301
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle		Pre-Collision Assist –	
Indicators.....	182	Troubleshooting.....	301
What Is a Plug-In Hybrid Electric		Pre-Collision Assist – Information	
Vehicle.....	181	Messages.....	302
What Is Low Engine Use Mode.....	182	Pre-Collision Assist – Warning	
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle		Lamps.....	301
Information – Troubleshooting.....	182	Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold	
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information		Weather Driving - Plug-In Hybrid	
– Information Messages.....	183	Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	323
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information		Predictive Speed Assist.....	268
– Warning Lamps.....	182	Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance.....	269
Post-Collision Braking.....	331	How Does Predictive Speed Assist	
Post-Crash Alert System.....	331	Work.....	268
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System		Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	270
Work.....	331	Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	270

# Index

Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	269
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	268
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off.....	269
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	272
Predictive Speed Assist – Information Messages.....	272
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	381
Programming the Garage Door Opener.....	160
Programming the Remote Control.....	65
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats.....	53
Protecting the Environment.....	28
Puncture See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	406
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	170

## R

Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	477
Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	477
Body Control Module.....	483
Cruise Control Module.....	488
Garage Door Opener.....	492
Keys and Remote Controls.....	492
Radio Transceiver Module.....	497
SYNC.....	501
Telematics Control Unit.....	507
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors.....	507
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....	514
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	431
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	156
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	155
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	154
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	154
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	154
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings.....	155
Rear Parking Aid.....	242
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....	242
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	242
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	242
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	242
Rear Seats.....	151
Manual Seats.....	151
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	247
Rear View Camera Limitations.....	247
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	247
Rear View Camera.....	247
Rear View Camera Settings.....	248
Rear View Camera Settings.....	248
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off.....	249
Switching Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicator On and Off.....	249
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out.....	248
Rebooting the Center Display.....	445
Recalling a Preset Position.....	157
Recovery Towing.....	332
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	332
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD, Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	335
Refreshing the Interior Air.....	143
Automatically Refreshing the Interior Air.....	143
Manually Refreshing the Interior Air.....	143
Refueling.....	192
Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door.....	195
Refueling System Overview.....	192
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	192
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	226

# Index

Remote Control Limitations.....	61	Roof Rack.....	311
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....	126	Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	311
Remote Start Limitations.....	126	Roof Rack Precautions.....	311
Remote Start.....	126	Route Guidance.....	459
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel.....	127	Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	459
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel.....	127	Canceling Route Guidance.....	459
Removing the Key Blade.....	62	Repeating an Instruction.....	459
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage.....	382	Running-In See: Breaking-In.....	323
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	379	Running Out of Fuel.....	190
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	520	Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	191
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	65	Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	190
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	143		
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	86	<b>S</b>	
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	86	Satellite Radio.....	441
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	343	Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number.....	442
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	343	Satellite Radio Limitations.....	442
Reporting Safety Defects in Canada.....	476	What Is Satellite Radio.....	441
Reporting Safety Defects in the United States.....	476	Saving a Preset Position.....	157
Resetting Driver Alert.....	305	Scheduled Maintenance.....	465
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	121	Scrolling Through Menu Items.....	439
Restarting the Engine.....	186	Seatbelt Extensions.....	48
Resuming the Set Speed.....	258	Seatbelt Precautions.....	42
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	229	Seatbelt Reminder.....	46
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	228	Checking Seatbelt Status.....	47
Reverse Brake Assist.....	228	How Does the Seatbelt Reminder Work.....	46
Troubleshooting.....	230	Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	46
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	230	Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	46
Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	231	Seatbelts.....	42
Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages.....	230	Automatic Locking Mode.....	44
Reverse Wipe.....	85	Seatbelt Reminder.....	46
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	85	Sensitive Locking Mode.....	44
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	85	Security.....	80
Rollover Warning.....	474	Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	80
		Passive Anti-Theft System.....	80
		Security – Troubleshooting.....	81
		Security – Troubleshooting.....	81
		Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	82
		Security – Information Messages.....	81
		Selecting a Drive Mode.....	274
		Selecting a Menu Item.....	439

# Index

Selecting the Audio Source.....	438	Signing In to Your Account.....	448
Sending and Receiving a Text Message.....	453	Sitting in the Correct Position.....	144
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	44	Software Update Indicators.....	461
How Does Sensitive Locking Mode Work.....	44	Software Update Settings.....	460
What is Sensitive Locking Mode.....	44	Software Update	
Service Data.....	25	See: Software Update Settings.....	460
Setting a Destination.....	458	See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	460
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	459	Sounding the Panic Alarm.....	62
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	459	Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....	471
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	459	Speed Control	
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	459	See: Cruise Control.....	257
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	459	Speedometer.....	110
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	458	Speed Sign Recognition	
Setting a Memory Preset.....	439	Indicators.....	303
Settings Data.....	26	Speed Sign Recognition	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Limitations.....	303
Gap.....	263	Speed Sign Recognition	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Precautions.....	303
Speed.....	262	Speed Sign Recognition.....	303
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	130	Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	304
Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences.....	207	Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	304
Setting the Clock and Date.....	439	Speed Sign Recognition – Information Messages.....	304
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	257	Stability Control Indicator.....	237
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height.....	76	Stability Control.....	237
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition		Starter Switch	
Speed Tolerance.....	304	See: Ignition Switch.....	169
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition		Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions.....	169
Speed Warning.....	304	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	169
Setting the Temperature.....	130	Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	175
Setting the Wake Word.....	446	Engine Block Heater.....	172
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P).....	216	Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	176
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	216	Starting the Engine.....	170
Side Parking Aid.....	243	Stopping the Engine.....	173
Locating the Side Parking Aid		Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	176
Sensors.....	244	Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions.....	177
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	244	Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages.....	176
Side Parking Aid Limitations.....	243	Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps.....	176
What is the Side Parking Aid.....	243		

# Index

Starting the Engine.....	170	Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	295
Restarting the Engine After Stopping It.....	171	Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	257
Starting a Flooded Engine.....	172	Switching Defrost On and Off.....	134
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	170	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	305
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System.....	171	Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off.....	72
Status Bar.....	443	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	264
Steering.....	238	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	129
Electric Power Steering.....	238	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	129
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	238	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	241
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	238	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	129
Steering – Frequently Asked Questions.....	240	Switching Repeat Mode On and Off.....	438
Steering – Information Messages.....	239	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	229
Steering – Warning Indicators.....	238	Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off.....	438
Steering Wheel.....	29	Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	237
Stopping the Engine.....	186	Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	454
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	174	Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	251
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	173	Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	252
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	77	Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	438
Storage.....	168	Switching the Display On and Off.....	440
Cup Holders.....	168	Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	96
Glasses Holder.....	168	Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	328
Storing Your Vehicle.....	381	Switching the Head Up Display On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	122
Sunroof.....	102	Switching the Head Up Display On and Off - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	122
See: Moonroof.....	102	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	130
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off.....	253		
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	261		
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	129		
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	96		
Switching Android Auto On and Off.....	457		
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	456		
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	233		
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	186		
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	290		
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	129		

# Index

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	129
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	83
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	280
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	280
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off.....	76
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	96
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	85
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	235
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off.....	322
Symbols Glossary.....	21
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle.....	21
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	460
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	460

## T

Tachometer.....	109
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	412
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	217
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode.....	218
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode.....	218
How Does Temporary Neutral Mode Work.....	217
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations.....	218
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....	340
The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program.....	474
The Mediation and Arbitration Program.....	475
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	477
Tire Care.....	394
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	403
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview.....	402

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	403
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	402
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	404
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	404
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	405
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	404
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	390
Tire Rotation.....	400
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	318
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	317
Towing a Trailer.....	317
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	320
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	320
Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle.....	321
Recommended Towing Weights.....	320
What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight.....	321
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	335
Towing Your Vehicle.....	335
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting – Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	337
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting – Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	337
Towing Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	337
Traction Control Indicator.....	235
Traction Control.....	235
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	235
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	235
Traction Control – Information Messages.....	236
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	235
Trailer Brake Precautions.....	317
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	322
Trailer Sway Control.....	322
Trailer Towing Hints.....	318
Transporting the Vehicle.....	333

# Index

Trip Computer.....	121
Trip Data.....	121
Trip Summary.....	119

## U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	345
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	345
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	346
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	345
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	356
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	357
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L Duratec, Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	358
USB Ports.....	163
Using Alexa Built-In.....	448
Using Auto Hold.....	233
Using Keyless Entry.....	70
Using Snow Chains.....	392
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....	115
Using This Publication.....	20
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....	341

## V

Vehicle Care.....	375
Cleaning the Exterior.....	376
Cleaning the Interior.....	377
Vehicle Charging Status.....	120
Vehicle Identification Number.....	432
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	432
Vehicle Identification Number Overview.....	432
Vehicle Identification.....	432
Vehicle Identification Number.....	432
Vehicle Range Display.....	110
Vehicle Software Updates.....	460
Vehicle System Reset.....	462

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	437
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....	437
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	436
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	437
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 13.2 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	134
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	129
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	139
Venting the Moonroof.....	103
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	277
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	277
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	404
Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	278
Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	278
Visual Search.....	29
Voice Interaction Examples.....	446
Voice Interaction.....	446

## W

Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication.....	20
Warranty Information.....	548
Washer Fluid Specification.....	428
Washers.....	87
Adding Washer Fluid.....	88
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	87
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	87
Using the Windshield Washer.....	87

# Index

Washer Precautions.....	87	What Is the Information Bar.....	111
Washers		What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	279
See: Wipers and Washers.....	84	What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer	
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	380	Weight.....	308
Waypoints.....	459	What Is the Memory Function.....	157
Adding a Waypoint.....	459	What Is the Pedestrian Alert	
Editing Waypoints.....	459	System.....	59
What Are the Instrument Cluster		What Is the Personal Safety	
Indicators.....	113	System.....	49
What Are the Instrument Cluster		What Is the Power Outlet.....	165
Warning Lamps.....	111	What Is the Rear Occupant Alert	
What Is 911 Assist.....	60	System.....	154
What Is AC Charging.....	201	What Is the Rear View Camera.....	247
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	433	What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring	
What Is Active Park Assist.....	253	System.....	402
What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....	179	What Is the Wireless Accessory	
What Is Alexa Built-In.....	448	Charger.....	166
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	186	What Is Traction Control.....	235
What Is Blind Spot Information		What Is Voice Interaction.....	446
System.....	289	Wheel and Tire Information.....	383
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	294	Wheel Nuts.....	411
What Is Cruise Control.....	257	Wi Fi	
What Is Drive Mode Control - 1.5L		See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	
EcoBoost™/2.0L EcoBoost™.....	273	Name or Password.....	436
What Is Drive Mode Control - Full Hybrid		See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi	
Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid		Network.....	433
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	273	See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	436
What Is Driver Alert.....	305	See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	436
What Is Eco Coach.....	277	Window Bounce-Back.....	98
What Is Ford Protect.....	463	Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	99
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	232	Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	99
What Is Keyless Entry.....	70	What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	98
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	297	Windows.....	98
What Is Remote Start.....	126	Window Bounce-Back.....	98
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	228	Wipers and Washers –	
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	303	Troubleshooting.....	88
What Is Stability Control.....	237	Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked	
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	143	Questions.....	88
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	199	Wipers and Washers – Warning	
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	225	Lamps.....	88
What Is the Gross Axle Weight		Wipers and Washers.....	84
Rating.....	308	Autowipers.....	84
What Is the Gross Combined Weight		Reverse Wipe.....	85
Rating.....	308	Washers.....	87
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight		Wipers.....	84
Rating.....	308	Wipers and Washers –	
What Is the Head Up Display.....	122	Troubleshooting.....	88
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	200		



# Index

---

Wipers.....	84
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	84
Wiper Precautions.....	84
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	166
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	166



